

TRƯỜNG THPT NGUYỄN CÔNG TRÚ

# GIÁO TRÌNH TIẾNG ANH

10, 11, 12



2016





TRƯỜNG THPT  
NGUYỄN CÔNG TRÚ



# GIÁO TRÌNH TIẾNG ANH

LỚP 10, 11, 12  
(CĂN BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO)



Đinh Thị Thuý Hoàng  
Đào

Lưu hành nội bộ  
2016



# MỤC LỤC

1. Active Voice (Bài 15).....	58
2. Adjective + Preposition (Bài 37).....	153
3. Adjectives & Adverbs (Bài 24) .....	101
4. AS IF (AS THOUGH) (Bài 19) .....	74
5. BECAUSE, ALTHOUGH (Bài 23) .....	98
6. Causative Form (Bài 25) .....	105
7. Clauses of Concession (Bài 30).....	120
8. Comparison (Bài 21) .....	84
9. Conditional Sentences (Bài 18) .....	69
10. Connectors (Bài 33) .....	133
11. Correlative Conjunctions (Bài 9).....	39
12. Emphasis (Bài 28) .....	116
13. Empty "IT" (Bài 7).....	35
14. Exclamations (Bài 10) .....	41
15. Hội thoại căn bản (Bài 41) .....	168
16. Inversion (Bài 2).....	16
17. Irregular Verbs.....	210
18. IT IS ESSENTIAL THAT (Bài 26).....	106
19. Linking Verbs (Bài 29) .....	118
20. Misused Words (Bài 45) .....	206
21. Modal Perfect (Bài 34).....	139
22. MUST, MUSTN'T, NEEDN'T (Bài 35) .....	143
23. Noun Clauses (Bài 31) .....	123
24. Paralellism (Bài 39) .....	163
25. Participles (Bài 4) .....	24
26. Passive Voice (Bài 14) .....	50
27. Phrasal Verbs (Bài 36) .....	145
28. Prepositions (Bài 42).....	177
29. Quantifiers (Bài 32) .....	127
30. Questions & Answers (Bài 11) .....	42
31. Redundancy (Bài 40).....	166
32. Relative Clauses (Bài 17) .....	62
33. Reported Speech (Bài 20).....	75
34. Sentence Transformation (Bài 44).....	203
35. SO THAT / IN ORDER THAT (Bài 5) .....	32
36. SO... THAT - SUCH... THAT (Bài 12) .....	45
37. Styles - Biến đổi VERB $\leftrightarrow$ NOUN (Bài 22) .....	95
38. Subject - Verb Agreement (Bài 38) .....	159
39. Tag Questions (Bài 8) .....	37
40. TOO... TO - ENOUGH TO (Bài 13).....	47
41. UNLESS (Bài 6).....	33
42. USE, USED TO, BE USED TO (Bài 16) .....	59
43. Verb Forms (Bài 1) .....	3
44. Verb Tenses (Bài 27) .....	108
45. Wish-Sentences (Bài 3).....	23
46. Word Forms (Bài 43) .....	199



{...} + V-ing  
+ O + to + V

# Bài 1

## VERB FORMS

allow = permit  
encourage  
recommend

advise

Ví dụ:

- Infinitive without TO	:	<b>TAKE</b>	<b>BE</b>
- Infinitive with TO	:	take	be
- Simple Present	:	to take	to be
- Simple Past	:	take(s)	am, is, are
- Present Participle / Gerund	:	took	was, were
- Past participle	:	taking	being
	:	taken	been

### I. VERB + TO-VERB (To-Infinitive)

Ex. He wanted *to go* with us.

### II. VERB + V-ing (khi VERB thuộc nhóm enjoy)

Ex. Mary enjoyed *cooking*.

## NHÓM ENJOY

enjoy, finish, miss, give up, practise, avoid, deny, feel like, mind, delay, postpone, suggest, recall, keep (on), allow, risk, advise, imagine, fancy, resist, admit, consider, involve, detest, resent...

### III. Cũng dùng V-ing sau những trường hợp này:

- sau giới từ (*in, on, at, by, without ...*)

- sau **to** (*khi to là giới từ*):

+ be used to

quen với

+ be accustomed to

quen với

+ look forward to

mong đợi

+ object to

phản đối

+ take to

bắt đầu

+ prefer ... to

thích... hơn

+ start sb. to

thúc đẩy ai làm gì

+ devote sth. to

cống hiến cái gì cho...

+ dedicate sth. to

cống hiến cái gì cho...

- worth

đáng

- can't help / couldn't help

không thể không...

- can't stand / can't bear / can't tolerate

không thể chịu đựng

- It's no use / It's no good

vô ích

- There is no point (in)

vô ích

- have difficulty / have trouble

khó làm

- with a view to

để, nhằm

+ V-ing



#### IV. VERB thứ nhất + Object + VERB thứ hai

	VERB thứ nhất		VERB thứ hai
1.	Verb bình thường	Object	to V
2.	make, let	Object	V
3.	see, watch, hear, listen (to), feel	Object	V-ing
			V (complete action)
4.	help	Object	(to) V
5.	keep, smell, find	Object	V-ing

#### Examples:

1. She always tells us **not to gossip**. (Passive: We are always told **not to gossip**)  
They **asked** me **to stay**. (Passive: I was asked **to stay**)
2. They **made** us **stay**. (Passive: We were made **to stay**)  
They didn't **let** me **go**. (Passive: I wasn't **allowed to go**)
3. They **saw** him **lying** there. (Passive: He was seen **lying** there)  
They **saw** him **fall** off a tree. (Passive: He was seen **to fall** off a tree)
4. We'll **help** them **(to) do** it. (Passive: They'll be helped **to do** it)
5. They **kept** me **waiting** outside. (Passive: I was kept **waiting** outside)  
I **found** him **standing** at the door (Passive: He was found **standing** at the door)

#### V. REMEMBER, STOP, TRY, REGRET

**REMEMBER + V-ing** (nhớ đã làm rồi )

(sau) (trước)

**REMEMBER + to V** (nhớ để làm)

(trước) (sau)

Ex. I'll remember **to ring** Bill

I remember **meeting** this man somewhere before.

**STOP + V-ing** (dừng lại để làm)

**STOP + to V** (= give up = thôi, ngưng, không làm nữa)

Ex. They stopped **talking** when the teacher came in.

It was hot, so we stopped **to have** a drink.



**TRY + V-ing** (thử)

**TRY + to V** (cố gắng)

Ex. Tom tried *to lift* the table, but it was too heavy.

She tried *eating* the snake soup, but she didn't like it.

**REGRET + V-ing** (hối hận vì đã làm)

**REGRET + to V** (áy náy vì sắp phải báo tin buồn hoặc sắp phải nói ra điều không hay)

Ex. I regret *being* late for school yesterday.

I regret *to say* that you have failed your exam.

## THÊM MỘT SỐ ĐIỂM CẦN NHỚ VỀ VERB FORMS

1. Dùng **V-ing** sau **GIỚI TỪ** (in, on, at, from, to, about, for, with, without, instead of, between, by, against...)

*My sister is fond of cooking.*

2. **-WOULD LIKE + to-V**

**-FEEL LIKE + V-ing**

**-LIKE:**

{ **LIKE + to-V** (thấy hợp lý, thích ở một thời điểm nào đó)  
 { **LIKE + V-ing** (like = enjoy – thích thật sự)

*I would like to stay.*

*I would like you to stay with me.*

*I feel like staying.*

*I like to go to the dentist every six months.*

*I like listening to classical music.*

3. **HOW + to-V** (cách làm / làm như thế nào)

*Can you show me how to operate the lift, please?*

4. **“ĐỂ”: to-V (= in order to-V)** (Xem trang 32)

*He studied hard to pass (in order to pass / so as to pass) the final exam.*

5. **TOO... + to-V** *The man was too old to work.*

**ENOUGH + to-V** *The man was not young enough to work.*

6. **USED TO / DIDN'T USE TO + V** *They used to swim in this river.*

**BE USED TO + V-ing** *I am used to getting up early.*

(Xem bài 16, trang 59)



7. **BUSY + V-ing**      *She was busy doing her housework.*  
**TOO BUSY + to-V**      *She was too busy to go out at weekend.*
8. **THE FIRST / THE LAST / THE ONLY + to V**  
*The president was the first person to speak (= who spoke).  
The last man to be interviewed (= who was interviewed) was Dr. Clark.  
In the qualifiers for the World Cup the Argentine team was the only one  
to win (= who won) all their matches.*
9. **ALLOW, PERMIT, ADVISE, RECOMMEND + Object + to V**  
**ALLOW, PERMIT, ADVISE, RECOMMEND + Không Object + V-ing**  
**ALLOW, PERMIT, ADVISE, RECOMMEND (Passive Voice): + to V**  
*They don't allow walking on the grass.  
They don't allow us to walk on the grass.  
We aren't allowed to walk on the grass. (Passive)*
10. **PREFER + V-ing + giới từ TO + V-ing**  
**WOULD RATHER + V (không TO)**  
*Tham khảo thêm:*  
- He prefers walking to cycling.  
- I'd prefer to start today. / I'd prefer not to wait.  
- He prefers wine to beer.  
- He would rather / He'd rather read than talk.  
- He preferred reading to talking.  
- He liked reading better than talking.  
- I'd rather have gone by air / I'd prefer to have gone by air.  
- He prefers to write his letters rather than (to) dictate them.  
- I should prefer to wait until evening.  
- Would you like him to paint it? - No, I'd rather he didn't paint it.  
  - No, I'd prefer him not to paint it.  
- I would rather you came tomorrow than today.  
- Wouldn't you rather be liked than feared?  
(A Practical English Grammar §§295-299; A Handbook of  
English Usage p. 118; Từ điển Hornby)
11. **NEED + V-ing = NEED to be + V3** : Cần được làm (bị động)  
*The car needs washing (The car wants washing)  
= The car needs to be washed.*
12. **NEEDN'T + V**  
**DON'T / DOESN'T / DIDN'T NEED + to-V** (Xem thêm cuối trang 143)  
*You needn't do it by hand. I'll lend you my machine.  
You don't need to cut the grass. I'll do it later.*
13. **A WASTE OF MONEY / A WASTE OF TIME + V-ing**  
*It was a waste of time reading that book. It was rubbish.  
It's a waste of money buying things you don't need.*



14. **FORMAL SUBJECT "IT"**: It is/was + Adj./Noun + **to V** (Xem trang 35)  
*It is necessary to learn English.*  
*It was my duty to help you.*
15. **EXTRA OBJECT "IT"**: find /think + Adj./Noun + **to V** (Xem trang 36)  
*Everyone finds it necessary to learn English.*  
*I found it my duty to help you.*
16. **IT TAKES / IT TOOK** (mất bao lâu) + **to V**  
**SPEND / WASTE... + V-ing**  
*It takes me fifteen minutes to walk to school.*  
*He spent the whole day playing computer games.*  
*I waste a lot of time day-dreaming.*
17. **GO + V-ing**  
*How often do you go swimming?      I'd like to go skiing.*  
*When did you last go shopping?      He went shopping alone.*
18. **KHEN / CHÊ**: It is (was) + adj. + of + object + **to V**  
*It was very kind of you to help me. (khen)*  
*It was careless of you to leave the window open. (chê)*
19. **I'M SORRY**  
**SHE IS GLAD**  
**THEY ARE DELIGHTED** } + **to V**  
*I am sorry to disturb you. / I am sorry to hear that you've been ill.*  
*I am glad to hear that you are feeling better.*  
*We were delighted to receive your invitation.*  
*You must be surprised to see a blind man driving.*
20. **PREVENT (STOP / KEEP) sb. / sth. FROM + V-ing**  
*The cold weather prevented us from going out.*
21. **PARTICIPLE PHRASE**: +V-ing (Active); +V<sub>(3)</sub> (Passive) (Xem tr. 26)  
*Taking off his hat, Sam entered the room.*  
*When asked about the secret, the man kept silent.*
21. **GERUND**: +V-ing  
*Playing basketball takes up too much of his time.*
22. **THE YEAR (MONTH / DAY...) TO COME**  
*I wish you happiness in the year to come (= which is going to come)*  
*May peace be with you in the days to come.*
23. **NOTHING / ANYTHING BUT + V**  
*We could do nothing but wait.*
24. **YOU ARE NOT TO BLAME**  
*It wasn't your fault. You are not to blame.*  
*Nobody is to blame for a natural disaster.*



**25. RELATIVE CLAUSE GIẢN LƯỢC: V-ing / to V**

*The man sitting (= who sat) at the desk was very polite. (Xem trang 65)*

*The last person to leave (= who leaves) the ship is the captain.*

*(Xem trang 6, số 8)*

*The campaign will be much more successful in the months to come.*

*(Xem trang 7, số 22)*

**26. PARTICIPLE = ADJECTIVE (Xem trang 24-25)**

*I'm bored because my job is very boring.*

*The park is a frightening place at night. Jack always feels frightened as he walks alone in the park at night.*

*It was an amusing story. The amused children laughed a lot.*

**27. CAUSATIVE FORM (Xem trang 105)**

*She will have an electrician fix the lamps.*

*She will get an electrician to fix the lamps.*

**28. PASSIVE VOICE (Xem trang 52)**

*People know that the earth goes round the sun.*

*→ The earth is known to go round the sun.*

**29. COMMAND SENTENCES**

*Open the door please.*

*Turn the light on.*

**30. Bất quy tắc:**

**Thực tập thêm:**

**lie** (nằm) - **lying**

**play** :

**lie** (nói dối) - **lying**

**try** :

**die** (chết) - **dying**

**study** :

**dye** (nhuộm) - **dyeing**

**argue** :

**travel** :

**write** :

**flee** :

**open** :

**begin** :

**stop** :

**read** :

**love** :

**prefer** :



## EXERCISES

10 câu dễ:



1. I hope (have) a job.
2. Try to avoid (make) him angry.
3. He is thinking of (leave) his job.
4. Will you help me (move) the desk?
5. Please let me (know) your idea.
6. It's no use (wait).
7. I admit (tell) him (keep) you (wait) in vain.
8. Gravity makes water (run) downhill.
9. Gravity keeps the moon (travel) around the earth instead of (shoot) off into space.
10. The mayor finished (speak) and sat down.

1. It is difficult (get) used to (eat) with chopsticks.
2. Stop (argue) and start (work).
3. I used (smoke) cigarettes a day.
4. I'd like (have) a look at your new car.
5. I'd like him (go) to a university, but I can't (make) him (go).
6. He postponed (make) a decision till it was too late (do) anything.
7. I'm looking forward to (see) you.
8. He warned her (not touch) the wire.
9. Would you mind (show) me how (work) the lift?
10. *Mrs. Jones:* I don't allow (smoke) in my room.  
*Mrs. Smith:* I don't allow my family (smoke) at all.  
*Mrs. Xoài:* No one is allowed (smoke) indoors.
11. If you go on (let) your dog (run) after cars, he'll end by (be) run over.
12. Do stop (talk); I'm trying (finish) a letter.
13. I didn't know how (get) to your house, so I stopped (ask) the way.
14. Ask him (come) in. Don't keep him (stand) at the door.
15. There are people who can't help (laugh) when they see someone (slip) on the banana skin.
16. I'm sorry (disappoint) you.
17. He was made (sign) a paper admitting his guilt.
18. It is better (put) your money in a bank than (keep) it under your bed.
19. He told me (try) (come) early.
20. Could I (see) Mr. Pitt, please?
21. I resent (work) on Saturdays.
22. The road (join) the two villages is very narrow.
23. Can you smell something (burn)?
24. (Look) at me and (answer) my question.
25. We listened to the old man (tell) his story from beginning to end.
26. Oh! I can feel something (crawl) up my leg! It must be an insect.





27. (Climb)<sup>ing</sup> the tree to get birds' eggs, the boy had a bad fall.
28. Is there anything here worth (buy)? <sup>ing</sup> /
29. The operation involves (put)<sup>ing</sup> a small tube into your heart.
30. You'll be able (do) it yourself when you are older.
31. He is too ill (eat) anything.
32. I prefer (drive)<sup>ing</sup> to (ride). <sup>ing</sup>
33. I prefer (eat)<sup>ing</sup> fish rather than meat. x to eat
34. Imagine (live)<sup>ing</sup> with someone who never stops (talk)! <sup>ing</sup> /
35. I don't enjoy (go)<sup>ing</sup> to the dentist. -
36. I'm (practise)<sup>ing</sup> (speak)<sup>ing</sup> English.
37. You'll never regret (do)<sup>ing</sup> a kind action. / to do
38. I remember (pay)<sup>ing</sup> him. I gave him ten dollars.
39. I'll remember (send) you a postcard when I reach London.
40. - Some doctors advise (take)<sup>ing</sup> vitamins to ensure good nutrition.  
 - My doctor advised me (not, lift)<sup>ing</sup> heavy things.  
 - Patients are advised (get)<sup>ing</sup> checked over once a year.
41. You seem (know)<sup>ing</sup> this area very well. Yes, I used (live)<sup>ing</sup> here.
42. Don't risk (put)<sup>ing</sup> all your financial eggs into just one basket.
43. I suggest (telephone)<sup>ing</sup> the hospital before (ask)<sup>ing</sup> the police (look) for him.
44. This miserable boy is used to (be)<sup>ing</sup> beaten.
45. **"I like it when my mother smiles. And I especially like it when I make her (smile)."** — Adriana Trigiani
46. Why do you keep (look)<sup>ing</sup> back? Are you afraid of (be)<sup>ing</sup> followed? -
47. I'm not used to (drive)<sup>ing</sup> on the left. When you see everyone else (do) it you'll find it quite easy (do) yourself. <sup>ing</sup>
48. Sad movies always make me (cry). /
49. It's a nice day. Does anyone fancy (go)<sup>ing</sup> for a walk? /
50. His boss is encouraging him (consider)<sup>ing</sup> (take)<sup>ing</sup> a management course.
51. **Though your clothing doesn't change your personality, it may help (to) (serve)<sup>ing</sup> as a reminder to you of the person you are trying (become).**
52. I avoid (go)<sup>ing</sup> to parties because I have trouble (remember)<sup>ing</sup> people's names.
53. He heard the clock (strike)<sup>ing</sup> six and knew that it was time for him (get) up.
54. It takes me hours (write) a letter. <sup>to</sup>
55. The cowboy began (fire)<sup>ing</sup> (to fire).
56. I'd rather (earn) my living by (clean)<sup>ing</sup> the floor than (make) money by (blackmail)<sup>ing</sup> people.
57. Why did he avoid (meet)<sup>ing</sup> you? -
58. He is too busy (take)<sup>ing</sup> care of her. ≠ He is busy (take)<sup>ing</sup> care of her.
59. Advertising helps (sell) more things to more people.
60. Advertising makes more people (want) radios.  
 = Advertising starts people to (buy)<sup>ing</sup> radios.
61. Best wishes to you in the year (come).
62. May the (come) year bring success to you.



63. Where would you like (have) lunch?
64. Where would you like me (put) these flowers?
65. Do you feel like (go) to a film or would you rather (stay) at home?
66. Don't forget (lock) the door before (go) to bed.
67. He gave up (gamble) in a
68. At first I enjoyed (listen) to him but after a while I got tired of (hear) the same story again and again.
69. The snow kept (fall) in a
70. It wouldn't be safe (start) now. We'll have (wait) until the rain stops.
71. It was stupid of you (write) down what you thought about him.
72. I object to (pay) twice for the same thing.
73. Elephants and mice have to try (live) together in harmony.
74. If you can't turn the key, try (put) some oil in the lock.
75. I am prepared (wait) here all night if necessary.
76. I regret (inform) you that your application has been refused.
77. There is no point in (remain) in a dangerous place if you can't do anything (help) the people who have (stay) there.
78. You needn't (leave) the house / You don't need (leave) the house.
79. She came home to find her sister (wait) for her.
80. I know my hair wants (cut) but I never have time (go) to the hairdresser's.
81. If you don't mind my (say), I think his (disappoint) behaviour is due to the fact that he isn't interested enough in his studies.
82. If you have problems (sleep), you could try (drink) some warm milk.
83. This coat needs (wash). These old shoes want (mend) / mending
84. **The way you speak reflects who you are. (Be) polite and gentle with your words. (Use) decent words while (interact) with everyone. Always think before you speak.**
85. He made us (promise) (not tell) anyone what we had seen.
86. There is nothing (do) but (wait) till somebody comes (let) us out.
87. I detest (live) in a hot climate.
88. The boys next door used (like) (make) and (fly) model aeroplanes, but they seem to have stopped (do) that now.
89. Would you rather (work) for someone else or (be) self-employed?
90. The (astonish) fact is that almost 90% of Americans eat too much.
91. There is no point (try) (explain) our difficulties.
92. I knew I wasn't the first (arrive), for I saw smoke (rise) from the chimney.
93. These animals are used to (live) in groups and (accept) group leadership.
94. You needn't (say) anything. Just (nod) your head and he will understand.
95. (Know) that he was poor, the young lady offered (pay) his fare.
96. (Tell) the truth, I don't like him.
97. (Lie) on this beach is much more pleasant than (sit) in the office.
98. Gagarin was the first man (fly) in a spaceship.
99. He was the first witness (be) called.



100. I'm sorry (disappoint) you but I can't let you (have) any more money.
101. He is believed (be) very rich.
102. Ernest Hemingway devoted most of his time to (write).
103. This woman has dedicated her whole life to (help) others.
104. He didn't do it himself. He had some workmen (do) it for him.
105. He didn't do it himself. He asked some workmen (do) it for him.
106. Don't waste time (mend) that broken vase.
107. He recalled (go) to school with a packed lunch.
108. In those days, being a student meant (spend) long hours in the library.  
*those days if you were a student, it meant that you spent long hours in library).*
109. I didn't mean (hurt) your feelings. (*I didn't intend to hurt your feelings*).
110. The accident wasn't his fault = He wasn't (blame) for the accident.
111. The thief got into the house because I forgot (shut) the window.
112. I think I hear someone (try) (open) the back window. Do you hear it too?
113. - "I'm bored." - "Let's go (fish)!"
114. This trend is expected to continue in the years (come).
115. The Red Cross is devoted to (help) people in times of crisis.
116. It's no use (argue) over matters of taste.
117. "I would rather (be) a citizen of a free country than king of an enslaved one." - Emperor Bảo Đại (1913-1997)
118. There is no point (lock) the barn door now that the horse has been stolen.
119. - It is (disappoint) to lose the game.  
- We are (disappoint) to lose the game.  
- We find it (disappoint) to lose the game.  
- (Disappointing) losing the game, he didn't talk to anyone.
120. There is no point in (build) a library if they can't afford (buy) books.
121. - The family went on vacation, and the parents took turns (drive).  
- It's your turn (wash) the dishes.
122. The lonely man took to (drink) and then fell ill.
123. Many people avoid (use) a microwave oven for fear of its radiation.
124. I couldn't resist (laugh) the way he answered my question.
125. I came to this school with a view to (get) a degree.
126. Weighed down with grief, she could do nothing but (weep).
127. They kept me (wait). No one asked me (come) in.
128. You shouldn't risk (enter) that building in its present condition.
129. They saved their money with a view to (be) able to buy a house someday.
130. His knowledge was so extensive that he was called a "(walk) dictionary".
131. After (spend) two days (argue) about where to go for their holiday they decided (not go) anywhere.

### Sách Giáo Khoa 10:

1. Marie Curie became the first woman (receive) a PhD from the Sorbonne.
2. A computer helps you (interact) with people around the world.



3. The founding of the Radium Institute in 1914 made Marie Curie's humanitarian wish (come) true.
4. Computer is a magical typewriter which allows you (type) and (print) any kind of document.
5. My parents may not want to (let) me (stay) the night away from home. I'll try to (persuade) them.
6. Sperm whale populations are at risk due to (hunt) ing and their accidental entrapment in fishing nets.
7. Trees, grasses, and other plant life play an important part in the natural circulation of water, and thus help to (conserve) it.
8. It is impossible to (open) a newspaper without (read) ing about the damage we are doing to the environment.
9. Conservation also includes a concern for the quality of the environment, so that people can enjoy (live) ing in it. It means (keep) ing it healthy and safe – and an interesting place (live) in.
10. With the victory over Germany in the final match, Brazil became the first team to (win) the trophy five times.
11. Europe and South America are the only continents to (have) produced World Cup champions.
12. Sport can also involve (travel) ing to other towns to play against other school teams and then (stay) ing on after the match for a meal or a drink.

**Sách Giáo Khoa 11:**

1. I was busy (imagine) ing how I would look in the hat.
2. Rosa and Luis are happy (be) to together for their golden anniversary.
3. Little John seemed to (know) his important role in the party and kept (grin) ing all the time.
4. Some of the happiest people in the world are those who help (bring) happiness to others.
5. They voluntarily spent their summer vacations (teach) ing illiterate people (read) and write.
6. People are busy (buy) ing gifts, (clean) ing and (decorate) ing their houses and (cook) ing traditional foods.
7. Yuri Gagarin became the first person (eat) ing and (drink) ing in weightlessness.

**Sách Giáo Khoa 12:**

1. Defensive players are not allowed (interfere) with the opponent's movement.
2. In times of war, the Red Cross is dedicated to (reduce) the sufferings of wounded soldiers, civilians and prisoners of war.
3. Children's education is changing very rapidly today. In the past, teachers kept children (sit) still for hours. They made them (memorize) all sorts of things. Today, many teachers wonder if it is not possible to make children (learn) at all. They say they can only help them (discover) things for themselves. (*Theo English 12 - Teacher's Book, cuối trang 71 – modified*).



4. It was the kind of accident for which nobody was really (blame).
5. My mother is always the first one (get) up in the morning.
6. The most common way of (attract) someone's attention is by (wave).
7. The people at the party were busy (play) some game.
8. We can nod slightly to let the waiter (know) we would like him (come) our table.
9. When you come to the interviewer, remember (bring) with you your sc certificates and letters of recommendation.
10. I'm not allowed (watch) TV until I have finished my homework.
11. Asians believe in "contractual" marriage; and love is supposed (follow) marriage, not precede it.
12. A husband is obliged (tell) his wife where he has been if he comes home late.



## VERB FORM TRANSFORMATION

He enjoys riding    He is used to riding    He'd like to ride    I saw him ride/riding

1. He spends two hours a day taking care of this garden. → It takes.....
2. It took us more than three months to work on this project. → We spent.....
3. Someone saw these boys climb that wall. → These boys.....
4. She will be made to leave the country. → They.....
5. Advertising makes us buy and produce more things. → Advertising.....
6. She regrets that she arrived home too late last night. → She regrets.....
7. He finds it strange to stand on his head. - He is not.....
8. (*Đề thi Tú Tài 1997*) He gets up early and he's used to it. → He's used.....
9. I'd rather you not smoke here. → I want you.....
10. I'd rather read than talk. → I prefer .....  
→ I like.....
11. I met this man somewhere before and I remember it. → I remember .....
12. Will you open that window, please? → Would you mind .....
13. Learning mathematics is necessary for us. → We find.....
14. John plays tennis well. → John is.....  
→ John is.....
15. He'd rather you paid him immediately. → He would prefer you .....
16. It's time I had a haircut. → It's time for.....



17. George is not so active as he was. → George used .....
18. "Let's buy them this picture as a wedding present". → I suggest.....
19. They forced him to work hard. → They made ..... ; → He .....
20. The garden still needs to be watered. → The garden still needs .....
21. The film star wore dark glasses so that no one would recognize her.  
→ The film star avoided.....
22. They managed to put out the fire. → They were.....
23. You should do morning exercises regularly. → You'd better.....
24. "Why don't you put a better lock on the door, Betty?" said John.  
→ John suggested.....
25. We couldn't drive fast because of the fog. → The fog prevented .....
26. For animal protection, the government has passed a special decree.  
→ To....., the government has passed a special decree.
27. You have written to me. Thank you. → Thank you.....
28. As for me, staying up late is rather difficult. → I find .....
29. I won't go with you. My father doesn't let me.  
→ My father doesn't let.....  
→ My father doesn't permit .....
30. She cried bitterly because of the news. → The news .....
31. I didn't ask him to resign. On the contrary, I tried what I could to persuade  
him to stay. → Far from .....
32. We can only wait now. → We can do nothing but .....
33. The life-guards tried in vain to save the drowning man. (Use "unsuccessful")
34. She prefers going to the library to staying at home. → She would rather .....
35. Leaving your fingerprints behind was very foolish. → It was foolish of .....
36. It is not worth trying to get your money back. → It is a waste .....
37. All other doctors were sent for before me. → I was the last .....
38. She broke down the moment she heard the news.  
→ On..... (Xem về "on" ở trang 31)
39. The customer demanded to see the manager. (Use "insist")
40. The robbers made the cashier open the safe of the shop.  
→ (Causative Form - Active) .....  
→ (Causative Form - Passive) .....
41. It was difficult for him to study with the radio on.  
→ He found .....  
→ He had .....  
→ He was not accustomed .....
42. Preparing the meal took her an hour. → It..... ; → She .....



43. I had no idea why she was crying. I just smiled at her.  
→ I had no idea why she was crying. I could do nothing .....
44. I am not interested in what you think. (interested [adj.])  
→ (interest [n.]) - I have .....  
→ (interest [v.]) - It doesn't .....  
→ (interest [v.]) - What .....  
→ (interest [n.]) - What .....
45. He has no intention of giving up his job here. (Xem trang 96, số 18)  
→ He doesn't .....
46. You are wasting your time when you play online games. → It is a waste ...
47. It is useless to complain about something that cannot be changed.  
→ It is no .....; → There is no .....
48. It was difficult for him to do the crossword. → He had difficulty .....  
→ He found it .....  
→ He could hardly .....
49. You should not make friends with these bad guys. (Use "avoid")
50. Mom advised us to depart early as traffic jams often occurred in the peak hour. (Use "suggested")
51. It wasn't his fault. (Use "to blame") → .....
52. All I did last night was watch TV. → I did nothing last night .....

**"There's no point having wishes if you don't  
at least try to do them."**

— Sally Nicholls, *Ways to Live Forever*

## Bài 2

# INVERSION

Chú ý phân biệt:

- + Động từ TO BE (am, is, are, was, were)
- + Trợ động từ (have, will, can ...)
- + Nếu không có TO BE hoặc trợ động từ (mượn do, does, did)
- + *have to, has to, had to*: mượn do, does, did.
- + 's = is ; 's = has ; 's = of (possessive case)
- + 'd = had ; 'd = would

1. I've never seen such a wonderful sight.
2. I've never seen such a wonderful sight before.



3. The lost child could be found nowhere.
4. I got no help from him.
5. She's no longer busy doing her housework.
6. We seldom enjoyed such a quiet evening.
7. He not only refused to help me but also laughed at me.
8. He had no sooner arrived home than he was asked to start on another journey.
9. We had scarcely entered the class when the work began.
10. He never smokes in bed.
11. Children rarely enjoy tea.
12. John is neither intelligent nor hard-working.
13. She has made good progress only within two months.
14. She's never been to Paris.
15. He'd explain the matter in no other way.
16. They no longer felt disappointed.
17. My sister hardly tries to get a better job.
18. These boys seldom did their exercises by themselves.
19. We no longer had to worry about the shortage of coal.
20. We'd no longer be frightened.
21. I have never heard such nonsense!
22. The restaurant cannot accept animals under any circumstances.
23. We have seldom seen him in his office since he took the job.
24. They don't make chocolate as good as this anywhere else.
25. They found the lost key in no time.

### TRANSFORMATION (Advanced)

1. He never sleeps on the floor. → *Never does he sleep on the floor.*
2. I have rarely seen such a sunset. → *Rarely have I seen such a sunset.*
3. They no longer work for my father. → *No longer do they work for my father.*
4. He hardly speaks to anyone. → *Hardly does he speak to anyone.*
5. We seldom saw such an amazing display of dance.  
→ *Seldom did we see such an amazing display of dance.*
6. You couldn't find a better restaurant anywhere.  
→ *Nowhere could you find a better restaurant.*
7. You can't use my car at any time.  
→ *At no time can you use my car.*
8. There are no circumstances where audience members may consume alcohol.  
→ *Under no circumstances may audience members consume alcohol.*
9. You shouldn't trespass this door under any circumstances.  
→ *Under no circumstances should you trespass this door.*
10. Visitors are not allowed to feed the animals on any account.  
→ *On no account are visitors allowed to feed the animals.*
11. This switch must not be touched on any account.  
→ *On no account must this switch be touched.* (A Practical English Grammar 45)



12. She won't tell lies for any reason. → *On no account will she tell lies.*
13. The company will not bear responsibility for lost property on any condition.  
→ *On no condition will the company bear responsibility for lost property.*
14. This machine only works in this way.  
→ *Only in this way does this machine work.*
15. You can only solve this puzzle by guessing.  
→ *Only by guessing can you solve this puzzle.*
16. He could only reach the shelf by standing on a chair.  
→ *Only by standing on a chair could he reach the shelf.*
17. We will only find a solution by patience and hard work.  
→ *Only by patience and hard work will we find a solution.*
18. The gang didn't know that the police had them under surveillance.  
→ *Little did the gang know that the police had them under surveillance.*
19. He had no idea that the treasure had been hidden in his garden.  
→ *Little did he know that the treasure had been hidden in his garden.*
- 
20. They not only rob you, they smash everything too.  
→ *Not only do they rob you, they smash everything too.* (A Practical English Grammar §45)
21. He is not only good at English but (also) can draw very well.  
→ *Not only is he good at English but he can also draw very well.*  
→ *Not only is he good at English but also he can draw very well.*
22. Harry not only missed the train but (also) lost his case.  
→ *Not only did Harry miss the train, but he also lost his case.*  
→ *Not only did Harry miss the train, but also he lost his case.*  
→ *Not only did Harry miss the train, but he lost his case as well.*
23. She not only forgot my birthday, but also didn't apologise for forgetting it.  
→ *Not only did she forget my birthday, but she also didn't apologise for forgetting it.* (Cambridge Dictionary)
24. All the food had been prepared and the table had been laid as well.  
→ *Not only had all the food been prepared but also the table had been laid.*
- 
25. I didn't notice my glass was broken until I filled it.  
→ *Not until I filled my glass did I notice it was broken.*  
→ *It was not until I filled my glass that I noticed it was broken.*
26. I only noticed my glass was broken when I filled it.  
→ *Only when I filled my glass did I notice it was broken.*
27. He didn't find out the truth until much later.  
→ *Not until much later did he find out the truth.*
28. She hadn't tasted such delicious food since she lived in Tuscany.  
→ *Not since she lived in Tuscany had she tasted such delicious food.*
- 
29. As soon as I got into the bath, someone knocked at the door.  
→ *No sooner had I got into the bath than someone knocked at the door.*



30. She had hardly begun to speak before people started interrupting her.  
→ *Hardly had she begun to speak when people started interrupting her.*
31. Just after solving one problem, I was faced with another.  
→ *Scarcely had I solved one problem when I was faced with another.*
32. The judge was taken ill just after the trial proceedings began.  
→ *Barely had the trial proceedings begun when the judge was taken ill.*
- 
33. Both Bill and Tom like golf. → *Bill likes golf and Tom does too.*  
→ *Bill likes golf and so does Tom.*
34. Neither he nor I liked the film. → *He didn't like the film; I didn't either.*  
→ *He didn't like the film; nor did I.*  
→ *He didn't like the film; neither did I.*
35. She was very religious, as most of her friends were.  
→ *She was very religious, as were most of her friends.*
36. The cake was excellent, the coffee was excellent too.  
→ *The cake was excellent, as was the coffee.*
37. She neither phoned me nor dropped me a line.  
→ *She didn't phone me, nor did she drop me a line.*  
→ *She didn't phone me, neither did she drop me a line.*
- 
38. I was so happy that I bought flowers for everybody in class.  
→ *So happy was I that I bought flowers for everybody in class.*
39. The exam was so difficult that few of the students passed it.  
→ *So difficult was the exam that few of the students passed it.*
40. She left so quickly that we did not even realize she was gone.  
→ *So quickly did she leave that we did not even realize she was gone.*
41. He worked so hard that he forgot his lunch.  
→ *So hard did he worked that he forgot his lunch.*
42. The play is so interesting that the theatre is likely to be full every night.  
→ *So interesting is the play that the theatre is likely to be full every night.*
43. He bought so many books that he couldn't read them all.  
→ *So many books did he buy that he couldn't read them all.*
44. Alice has so much homework that she can't finish it all.  
→ *So much homework does Alice have that she can't finish it all.*
45. She danced so much that she couldn't walk afterwards.  
→ *So much did she dance that she couldn't walk afterwards.*
46. The force of the storm was so great that trees were uprooted.  
→ *Such was the force of the storm that trees were uprooted.*
47. The excitement was so great that we all couldn't sleep.  
→ *Such was the excitement that we all couldn't sleep.*
48. My love for you is so deep that even the oceans can't compare.  
→ *Such is my love for you that even the oceans can't compare.*



- 
- 49. If I should change my mind, I'll let you know. (Xem trang 72, số 1)  
→ *Should I change my mind, I'll let you know.*
- 50. If you should hear the fire alarm, leave the building at once.  
→ *Should you hear the fire alarm, leave the building at once.*
- 51. If I were you, I would accept his offer.  
→ *Were I you, I would accept his offer.*
- 52. If he were to agree, he would probably become the next president.  
→ *Were he to agree, he would probably become the next president.*
- 53. If she were not shy, she would have a good time at the party.  
→ *Were she not shy, she would have a good time at the party.*
- 54. If it were not for his help, I would never complete the project.  
→ *Were it not for his help, I would never complete the project.*
- 55. If I had been told earlier, I would have reacted differently.  
→ *Had I been told earlier, I would have reacted differently.*
- 56. If I hadn't seen it, I wouldn't have believed it.  
→ *Had I not seen it, I wouldn't have believed it.*
- 57. If it had not been for your assistance, I would have failed.  
→ *Had it not been for your assistance, I would have failed.*
- 
- 58. A small cottage stood on the other side of the river.  
→ *On the other side of the river stood a small cottage.*
- 59. A cat sat in the middle of the floor.  
→ *In the middle of the floor sat a cat.*
- 60. His faithful dog lay at his feet.  
→ *At his feet lay his faithful dog.*
- 
- 61. The boy ran away. → *Away ran the boy!*
- 62. The rain came down. → *Down came the rain.*
- 63. The knights came round the corner. → *Round the corner came the knights.*
- 64. The birds flew away. → *Away flew the birds.*
- Hornby, *Guide to Patterns and Usage in English* §2.10:
- 65. He's coming. → *Here he comes!*
- 66. The bus is coming. → *Here comes the bus!*
- 67. She's going. → *There she goes!*
- 68. The bell is ringing. → *There goes the bell!*
- 
- 69. All the money we had lost was on the table.  
→ *On the table was all the money we had lost.*
- 70. A priceless necklace was lost among the cheap plastic beads.  
→ *Lost among the cheap plastic beads was a priceless necklace.*
- 
- 1. There are more people out of work in this city than ever before.  
→ Never before have .....



2. The truth only came out on the publication of the general's personal diaries.  
→ Only when .....
  3. She didn't write to her parents until she found a job. → Not till .....
  4. They won't let you enter the recital hall until you have tickets. → Only when .....
  5. He forgot about the gun until he got home. → Not until .....
  6. The refugees felt unsafe until they had crossed the border. → Not until .....
  7. We only dispatch goods after receiving the money. → Only when .....
  8. The telephone rang just after he left the room. → No sooner .....
  9. He got married as soon as he graduated from the college. → Hardly .....
  10. You won't find a school anywhere whose pupils get such results.  
→ Nowhere .....
  11. It was the most beautiful place I had ever visited. → Never before .....
  12. You should write down your thoughts in no circumstances. → Under .....
  13. If there had been more rain, our crop would have been better. → Had .....
  14. She had no idea that he was unfaithful to her. → Little .....
  15. Immediately he returned from his run, he had to re-organise the morning  
schedule. → Scarcely .....
  16. Thomas found a good job just after he got married. → No sooner .....
  17. Their parents approved, so the boy and the girl could marry each other.  
→ Had it .....
  18. I couldn't help you with your Japanese grammar question in any way.  
→ In .....
  19. Both Tom and Mary remember the date. (Use "so" with inversion) → Tom .....
  20. Both Tom and Mary remember the date. (Use "nor" with inversion) → Tom ...
  21. If I were in your shoes, I would accept the invitation. → .....
  22. The phone stopped ringing the moment I got downstairs. → No sooner .....
  23. She didn't write to her parents until she found a job.  
→ Not until ..... ; → It was not .....
  24. Because it is raining heavily, we can't drive fast. → Were it .....
  25. She doesn't like tea. Me too. → She doesn't like tea .....
  26. He'd explain the matter in no other way. → In .....
  27. I got to know Peter only after meeting him several times. → Only after .....
  28. There are no circumstances where audience members may consume alcohol.  
→ Under .....
  29. They started to argue soon after they got married. → Barely .....
  30. If I won the first prize in the national lottery, I would no longer work.  
→ Were .....
  31. They have no intention of paying and we don't either. → They .....
  32. The film wasn't released in the summer. It wasn't successful. → Had .....
- (Cho các câu 33-37 dưới đây, xin xem bài 30 *Clauses of Concession*, trang 120)
33. Although he is young, he is knowledgeable. → Young .....
  34. Although my parents are busy, they try to spend as much time with their  
children as possible. → Busy .....



35. Although they are different, all these advertisements are alike in important way. → Different .....  
36. Although I tried hard, I couldn't work out the answer. → Try .....  
37. Although she tries hard, she cannot comment on this. → Try .....

### ADVANCED

1. A cat sat on the television. → On .....  
2. I not only enjoy classical music but also have regular music lessons.  
→ Not only .....  
3. Love comes first, then marriage comes. → First .....  
4. She walked so fast that two people she passed looked back at her and the she was raising. → So .....  
5. My baby daughter was beautiful beyond belief. → Beautiful .....  
6. The priceless Victorian desk was lost among the old tables and chairs.  
→ Lost .....  
7. An old tree stands at the corner. → At .....  
8. He was so anxious that he couldn't sleep. → So .....  
9. He was a big man. He could not sit in that chair.  
→ He was such .....  
→ He was so .....  
10. The place was too bad to stay. → It was too .....  
11. The last bus is coming. → Here .....  
12. He spent all his money. He borrowed some from me. → Not only .....  
13. Those days were happy, when we lived under the same roof with our par  
→ Happy .....  
14. He spoke so quickly that I missed the middle part of what he said. → So .....  
15. He is such a slow speaker that his students get bored. → So .....  
16. You were not only late, but you didn't have a good excuse either.  
→ Not only .....  
17. We not only got lost, but our car broken down. → Not only .....  
18. The bees flew away. → Away .....  
19. Immediately he learnt about his mother's incurable disease, he cried his  
out. → No .....  
20. The greatest warrior the world lies here. → Here .....



*(Lưu ý inversion)*

**"Not in time, place or circumstance but in the man lies success"** Sự thành công không hề tại ở thời gian, không gian hay hoàn cảnh, nhưng ở chính con người mình.

— James Joyce, 20th-century Irish novelist



## Bài 3

## WISH-SENTENCES

WISH (ao ước)

IF ONLY (ước gì, phải chi)

- Động từ **WISH** luôn ở thì **PRESENT** (I wish, he wishes,...)
- Mệnh đề tiếp theo:
  - + ao ước trái với hiện tại: dùng **S. PAST** (nếu là TO BE: dùng **WERE**)
  - + ao ước trái với quá khứ: dùng **PAST PERFECT**
  - + ao ước ở tương lai: dùng **WOULD / COULD + V<sub>(1)</sub>**
- **CHÚ Ý** những cách nói chỉ sự ân cần hoặc không hài lòng: *I regret; I'm sorry; I'm afraid; too; lazy; want...*
- **CHÚ Ý** những cách nói chỉ tương lai: *soon; next week; when he grows up...*

1. If only we (have) a phone! I'm tired of queuing outside the public phone box.
2. I wish I (ask) the fishmonger to clean these fish. (I'm sorry I didn't ask him.)
3. I wish I (know) what is wrong with my car.
4. I wish transistor radios never (be) invented.
5. People are starting to wish the Internet (never, be) invented.
6. What I said made matters much worse. If only I (keep) my mouth shut!
7. I wish I (not try) to repair it. I only made it worse.
8. My father isn't here. I want him to be here now. → I wish.....
9. She lives far and far away from me. → If only .....
10. You talk more than you work. The teacher wants you to work more than to talk. → The teacher wishes .....
11. I'm sorry I didn't help you yesterday.
12. I regret that you didn't give me a chance to tell you the truth.
13. John would like to be an astronaut when he grows up.
14. Mary is afraid she won't be able to attend your wedding next week.
15. I'm sorry I was absent from the class yesterday.
16. Tom is too lazy. His parents want him not to be too lazy.
17. Tom is too lazy. His parents want him to be more studious (chăm chỉ).
18. We regret that we didn't have enough money to buy that house.
19. I'm afraid he won't get over his illness soon.
20. You drive too fast. → If only .....
21. You drive too fast. I'd like you to drive more slowly. → If only .....
22. Peter regrets buying this secondhand computer. → Peter wishes .....
23. I am too short to play basketball. (Use "tall") → I wish .....
24. We have to get up early every day. → I wish.....
25. She doesn't love him. What does he wish? → He .....



26. I am living far from home. I wish I would be with my parents in the future. → I have a .....
27. I want the world to be better than it is now. → I wish .....  
→ I have a wish .....  
→ My wish is .....

## Bài 4

# PARTICIPLES

### 1. Participles Used as Adjectives

#### Participles used as adjectives:

- + *The lesson was **boring**. It was a **boring** lesson.*  
(gây buồn chán)
- + *The **bored** pupils went into sleep during the lesson.*  
(buồn chán)

#### Participles used as adjectives:

- + PRESENT PARTICIPLE (V-ing): nghĩa Active  
I saw a ***sleeping*** dog.  
(con chó ngủ)
- + PAST PARTICIPLE (V-ed / V3): nghĩa Passive  
I'd like a ***boiled*** egg, please.  
(quả trứng [được / bị] luộc)

1. Mike is (interest) in astronomy. He finds astronomy very (interest)
2. It's been raining all day. I hate this weather. The weather is (depress). The weather makes me (depress).
3. I turned off the television in the middle of the program. The program was (bore). I was (bore) with the program.
4. Lan is really (excite) about going to Singapore. It will be an (excite) experience for her.
5. Hương teaches small children. It's a hard job. Hương often finds her job (exhaust). At the end of the day's work she is often (exhaust).
6. John is a hard-(work) student.
7. I like eating half-(cook) beef.
8. Are you (please) with the exam results?
9. Everyone was (surprise) that he passed the examination.
10. The news that he passed the examination was (surprise).
11. He is always (tire) when he gets home from work.



amazed – amazing .....	frightened - frightening .....
amused - amusing .....	frustrated - frustrating .....
annoyed - annoying .....	horrified - horrifying .....
astonished – astonishing .....	interested - interesting .....
bored – boring .....	irritated - irritating .....
confused - confusing .....	pleased - pleasing .....
depressed - depressing .....	puzzled - puzzling .....
disappointed - disappointing .....	relaxed - relaxing .....
disgusted - disgusting .....	satisfied - satisfying .....
embarrassed - embarrassing .....	shocked - shocking .....
encouraged - encouraging .....	surprised - surprising .....
excited - exciting .....	terrified - terrifying .....
exhausted – exhausting .....	tired - tiring .....
fascinated – fascinating .....	worried - worrying .....

12. A microscope gives you a (fascinate) glimpse of life in a drop of water.
13. He's one of the most (bore) people I've ever met. He never stops talking and never says anything (interest).
14. Mary was (bore) with long and difficult exercises.
15. Did you meet anyone (interest) at the party?
16. Sometimes I was placed in an (embarrass) situation.
17. I was (embarrass) to be praised aloud in front of so many people.
18. The (smile) *Mona Lisa* is on display in the Louvre in Paris.
19. The (clean) shoes were placed in the sun to dry.
20. The (clean) service comes every Wednesday.
21. *Participle*: (Speak) English is different from (write) English.  
*Gerund*: (Speak) English is different from (write) English.
22. Life expectancy [tuổi thọ] is shorter in (develop) countries than in industrialized countries.
23. Countries with high GDP (gross domestic product = tổng sản phẩm trong nước) per capita are described as (develop) countries.
24. That Dracula film was absolutely (terrify).
25. The difference between the words *affect* and *effect* is (confuse).
26. They all needed a break after a (tire) journey.
27. Betty was (shock) to hear about the earthquake.
28. I was so loved that I never realized I was an (adopt) child.
29. There is hot and cold (run) water in all the bedrooms.
30. I'm (confuse). I have no idea what to do now.
31. Did you hear the (shock) news about the accident?
32. The matting was soaked with rain; and there was dust on the (paint) walls.
33. I was a little (disappoint) to be kept waiting so long.
34. That film is not (amuse) despite being a comedy.



35. Your bathroom is (disgust)! Couldn't you clean it a little?
36. (Dry) fruits offers some advantages over fresh fruits.
37. Can you tell me where that (annoy) noise comes from?
38. It was more (annoy) to me that he did not show up for the party.
39. After a (relax) visit, I went back to my hotel.
40. Many people find spiders (con nhện) (frighten).
41. I was more (frighten) of dogs than spiders when I was a child.
42. Chop-shop is a garage where (steal) cars are dismantled so that their parts be sold separately.
43. The (break) dishes lay on the floor.
44. The (tremble) children were given a blanket for warmth.
45. Compassionate friends tried to console the (cry) children.
46. The (interest) tennis match caused a great deal of excitement.
47. The (excite) passengers jumped into the lifeboats (xuống cứu sinh) notified that the ship was sinking.
48. The wind made such (frighten) noises that the children ran to their par room.
49. The (frighten) hostages (con tin) only wanted to be left alone.
50. Mrs. Harris's (approve) smile let us know that our speeches were well do
51. Our representative presented the (approve) plan to the public.
52. We could not open the (lock) door without a key.
53. As we entered the (crowd) room, I noticed my cousins.
54. Dr. Jameson told my brother to elevate his (ache) foot.
55. The police towed away the (park) cars because they were blocking entrance.

## ADVANCED

Ngoại lệ:

the <b>escaped</b> prisoner	a <b>retired</b> teacher	<b>fallen</b> rocks
a <b>learned</b> professor	a <b>drunken</b> spectator	a <b>sunken</b> ship

(Oxford Guide to English Grammar 137, 301)

- *The **escaped** convicts were reported to be seen in the Everglades.*
- ***Retired** professors can continue to share their wisdom.*
- *The **fallen** leaves covered the garden path.*

## 2. Participle Phrases

- + **Active:**
- Bỏ Subject
  - Verb: Infinitive + ING (Phủ định thêm **not**)
  - Bỏ từ nối (*and, then, ...*), bỏ *Because*
  - Thay Subj. ở mệnh đề sau (nếu cần)



- + **Passive:**
- Bỏ Subject, bỏ To Be (*am, is, are, ...*)
  - Giữ lại Past Part. (V-ed/V(3) )
  - Bỏ từ nối (*and, then, ...* ), bỏ *Because*
  - Thay Subject ở mệnh đề sau (nếu cần)

● **Active:**

The soldiers walked rapidly, and they reached the town in fifteen minutes.

→ *Walking rapidly*, the soldiers reached the town in fifteen minutes.

● **Passive:**

When the actress was asked about her future plans, she remained silent.

→ *When asked about her future plans*, the actress remained silent.

1. The children waited for the play to begin. They grew bored.
2. Whenever Mary was called, she stood up at once.
3. Because Dick didn't have enough money, he didn't buy that dictionary.
4. The woman felt sorry for the beggar and she gave him a large sum of money.
5. Mr. Brown is a good doctor and he works in a big hospital.
6. The workers were badly treated by the boss, so they went on strike to protest.
7. The pupils saw that their teacher got angry. They told each other to keep quiet.
8. After Mike fell asleep at the wheel, he crashed into a car on the opposite lane.
9. Tom was chosen as the best pupil in the school, and he was very happy.
10. Lan is the eldest child and the only daughter in the family, and she tries to help with the household chores.
11. The old woman sipped a cup of tea and began her story.
12. I didn't want to inconvenience my friend by asking him to drive me to the airport, so I decided to take a taxi.
13. When the sun rose out of the sea in front of us, it started to warm our faces.
14. Because the document was printed on the very first press, it was extremely valuable.
15. Because Nancy was born two months prematurely (sinh non trước hai tháng), she needed special care for the first few days of her life.
16. The little boys didn't understand the directions, and they got lost.
17. I recognized his face but I forgot his name. I just smiled and said, "Hi."
18. Anna was convinced that she could never learn to play the piano. Therefore she stopped taking lessons.
19. Because flies have sticky pads on their feet, they can walk on the ceiling.
20. These animals were hunted by lions, and they scattered into the trees.
21. Jack didn't pay attention to his driving. He didn't see the large truck until it was almost too late.
22. (Đề thi Khối D, 2011) *Tìm lỗi trong câu* *Publishing in the UK*, the book *has won* a number of awards *in* recent regional *book fairs*.



23. (Đề thi Khối D, 2013) \_\_\_\_\_ one of the most beautiful forms of perform art, ballet is a combination of dance and mime performed to music.  
A. Being considering    B. Considering    C. Considered    D. To consid

+ Các thì **Perfect**: dùng (not) having + V<sub>(3)</sub>

24. Because I've not seen him for a long time, I'm afraid I won't recognize him.  
25. After all the papers had been collected, they were sent to Hanoi.  
26. After the boys had finished their supper, they went out to play.  
27. Because George had not been notified (thông báo) of the change in meeting time, he arrived late.  
28. Dabec Vidkham had been hurt in the first game, so he sat on the bench for the rest of the season.  
29. Susan had been told the bad news. She sat down and cried.  
30. The man has not slept for three days. He is feeling groggy (chệnh choạng).  
31. The man had been starved for days, and he found the ham sandwich was appealingly.  
32. Michael has not been to Russia. He cannot tell you anything about the life of life there.  
33. The teacher had made the first point clear. Now he explained the second.  
34. Jack couldn't get the job because he hadn't applied in time.  
35. After Sue had been shown into the office, she waited for the dentist to arrive.

## ADVANCED Dangling Participles

Incorrect: After jumping out of the boat, the shark bit the man.

Correct: After jumping out of the boat, the man was bitten by a shark.

*Correct the following illogical participial modifiers.*

1. After winning the tennis match, the victory made Nancy jumped for joy.
2. Being young, my parents don't understand me.
3. After painting the car, it was given to the man's wife by the man.
4. Before singing the school song, a poem was recited.
5. Before playing ball, a two-minute period of silence was observed by baseball players for their recently deceased teammate.
6. Dressed in a long evening dress, he thought his wife looked elegant.
7. Being an early riser, it was easy for Edna to adjust to her company's summer schedule.
8. Landing at the airport, the reporters surrounded the president's plane.
9. Having bitten several pedestrians, the owner forcibly muzzled his dog.
10. Working until the last minute, the deadline was met.
11. Having been fixed the last night, we can use the car now.
12. Moving out of college, my computer fell and broke.
13. Travelling to Finland, the weather got colder and colder.



14. Having left Europe for good, Peter's future seemed hopeless.
- ce 15. When (being) young, circuses were interesting to us.
16. Having recorded the results of the experiment, Kate's notebook was closed.
17. Baked this morning, we ate up all the cookies by five o'clock.
18. Sitting down, the chair felt warm and comfortable under Agatha.
19. Shocked by the gravity of the situation, something had to be done.
20. Looking at the screen, an error message (lỗi báo lỗi) displayed.
21. While walking down the road, a lovely tree caught Celine's attention.
22. Riding along on my bicycle, a dog knocked me over.
- ng 23. Trying to avert (tránh) an accident, the car was driven into the ditch.
24. Seeing from the moon, our earth appears as a "blue ball".
- or 25. Having been thrown in the air, the dog caught the stick.
26. Sitting on the park bench, the sun disappeared behind the clouds.
27. Turning around the corner, an old church appeared in front of us.
28. Running for her train, the wet platform caused Jane to slip.
- ng 29. Being very protective of its young, all those who approach the nest are attacked by the mother eagle.
- ay 30. Plunging into the water, the drowning child was rescued.
31. Criticizing the defendant (bị cáo) for his cruel behavior, the sentence was handed down by the judge.
32. Before leaving for vacation, my final paper had to be written.
- e. 33. Working on my computer, the power went out, and I lost all of my work.
34. Standing at the gate, a scorpion stung the man. (sting, stung, stung = chích)
35. Being crowded in the car, the trip was uncomfortable.

### 3. Transformation

1. We switched off the lights before we went to bed. – Having .....
2. Chelsea does not eat meat because she is a vegetarian. – Being .....
3. I arrived late because didn't know about the change of time. – Having no .....
4. This was the first time the little girl had flown in an airplane, she was surprised and a little frightened when her ears popped. – Never having .....
5. Being good at cooking, she often brings a lot of delicious dishes to share with others. – As a .....
- ne 6. After informing the little boy of his mother's illness, they took him to London. – After being .....
7. The mortally wounded bull gave a loud cry and dropped to its knees with blood streaming from his mouth. – Crying .....
- w 8. No sooner had he left work than he rushed to the bar. – As soon as leaving....  
(Xem Bài 2 *Inversion* trang 16)
9. As a talented scientist, he significantly contributed to the country's atomic research. – Being .....
10. They spoke against him because they had no idea about his presence there. – Not knowing that .....



## 4. Absolute Construction

\_\_\_\_\_, we missed our plane.

- A. As the taxi being late      B. The taxi was late  
C. The taxi being late      D. The taxi to be late

→ C là câu trả lời đúng.

•••

(1) Because the taxi was late, we missed our plane.

(2) The taxi being late, we missed our plane.

- Câu (1) là câu thông thường, có hai mệnh đề. Liên từ "*Because*" khiến cho hai mệnh đề có mối liên hệ nhân quả: vì taxi đi trễ (nguyên nhân), nên chúng ta lỡ chuyến bay (hậu quả).

- Câu (2) sử dụng *absolute construction* (cấu trúc tuyệt đối). Vì không có liên từ và vì động từ không được chia ở một thì nào, nên cụm từ *The taxi being late* không có liên hệ gì về ngữ pháp với mệnh đề *we missed our plane*. Từ "*absolute*" nghĩa là "*independent*" (độc lập) hay "*not related*" (không liên hệ).

- Vì có hai chủ ngữ khác nhau, *absolute construction* hoàn toàn khác với *participle phrase*.

Ví dụ thêm:

- When the dance was over, we left.  
→ *absolute construction*: The dance being over, we left.
- Because the teacher was absent, we had no school yesterday.  
→ The teacher being absent, we had no school yesterday.
- If the weather permits, we shall go picnicking.  
→ The weather permitting, we shall go picnicking.
- As the wind was favourable, the Greek fleet set sail for Troy.  
→ The wind being favourable, the Greek fleet set sail for Troy.
- As soon as the last guest had left, the hostess settled down to rest.  
→ The last guest having left, the hostess settled down to rest.
- After her work for the day was done, she went to bed.  
→ Her work for the day done, she went to bed.

## PRACTICE

*Rewrite the sentences, using the absolute construction*

- The weather was fine, so they went for a walk.
- Because the elevator was broken, the employees had to walk the stairs.
- The rain had begun, so they decided to call off the concert in the park.
- As there was little time left, they had to hurry.
- Once the guns were fully loaded, we found it easy to pass the forest.
- It was difficult to settle the matter, therefore we decided to meet again on the following day.
- When the curtain rose, the audience anticipated the start of the play.



8. Because her father is a sailor, Jane knows all about boats.
9. Because Marcella didn't have her car, Clementine volunteered to drive.
10. One man had been wounded, so the entire hunting party returned to the city.
11. When his bicycle had a flat tyre, I offered to lend him my bike.
12. The bell rang sharply, and Ryan realized that he was late again.
13. As soon as the chief guest took his seat, the meeting began.
14. As everything was already done, I had nothing to do.
15. It was so late that there were no buses in the street.

## 5. Other Constructions with V-ing

**instead of** (thay vì )

**without** (mà không [có], nếu không [có])

**on / upon** (khi )

**in spite of / despite** (mặc dù, tuy)

**besides / apart from** (ngoài)

1. He went out. He didn't ask the teacher. (**without**)
2. Susan didn't watch TV. She went to bed early. (**instead of**)
3. He translated the article. He didn't use the dictionary. (**without**)
4. I saw the plane coming toward me. I dashed for cover. (**on**)
5. They weren't given the job. They were given some money. (**instead of**)
6. I didn't get the job though I had all the necessary qualifications. (**in spite of**)
7. When the author arrived in London, he found another explanation. (**on**)
8. Though he didn't speak English, Bob decided to settle in London. (**despite**)
9. I did the cooking and looked after the children. (**besides**)
10. Can you touch your toes if you don't bend your knees? (**without**)
11. When he returned to America, he settled on a farm in eastern Texas. (**on**)
12. She not only sings well but also dances beautifully. (**apart from**)
13. I heard that my sister was planning to get married. I decided to leave the flat to her. (**on**)
14. He is an unselfish man. He always helps people and doesn't think of his own benefit. (**without**)
15. Jane burst into tears when she was told to leave. (**on**)
16. She felt excited and nervous when she arrived at the station. (**apart from, on**)  
→ **Apart from** ..... **on** ....., she also felt nervous.
17. If the firemen hadn't responded quickly, our house would have been burnt down. (**without**) (Xem trang 72, số 4)
18. I heard that Nadia was in the hospital. I called her family to find out what was wrong. (**on**)
19. As soon as we returned to our hotel, we lounged in the lobby for some time to enjoy the beautiful music of the piano player. → **Upon** .....
20. Although he was disabled, he sailed around the world. (**despite**)



# Bài 5

## SO THAT

### (IN ORDER THAT)

+ Chú ý mệnh đề ở sau:

- cùng Subject (xem câu 1)

- khác Subject (xem câu 2)

**so that**

+

**clause.**

subject

can; can't

could; couldn't

will; won't

would; wouldn't

+ Khi cùng Subject: có thể dùng

**- (IN ORDER) TO**

**- IN ORDER NOT TO**

- (SO AS) TO

- SO AS NOT TO

1. I'm studying hard. I want to pass the final exam.
2. I wrote to him . I wanted him to know my decision soon.
3. The man spoke slowly. He wanted everybody to be able to hear him clearly.
4. John gets up early. He doesn't want to be late for class.
5. The boy feigned to be sick. He hoped we didn't make him work.
6. Please arrive early. We want to be able to start the meeting on time.
7. These men were talking in whispers. They didn't want anyone to hear their conversation. (*Dùng NO ONE*)
8. I'll give her my telephone number. I want her to be able to phone me.
9. We wore warm clothes. We didn't want to get cold.
10. Come on time or you'll miss an important part of the lecture.
11. He is studying higher mathematics. He wants to attend an international mathematics contest.
12. She locked the door. She didn't want anybody to disturb her.
13. She locked the door. She didn't want to be disturbed.
14. He apologized. He wanted her not to be angry.
15. The robber changed his address all the time. He didn't want us to find him.
16. We built a pool in the garden. We want our children to be able to swim in hot weather.
17. We stayed out all night . We wanted to be able to watch a meteor storm.
18. Mary always goes home as soon as the class is over. She doesn't want her mother to wait for her.
19. I'm studying hard. I want to keep pace with my classmates.
20. This law was passed to prevent the forests from being exploited.



## ADVANCED

1. They did their job well. They hoped an increase their salary. (**in order that**)
2. These measures have been taken so that the company's profits may be increased. (**with a view to**)
3. I'm bringing some pots and pans so that I can cook my meals. (**for**)
4. She skipped meals because she wanted to lose weight. (**with the intent of**)
5. They spoke quietly so that they wouldn't wake the children. (**to**)
6. I started blogging again so as to practice my English. (**for the purpose of**)
7. It was hot, so we stopped to have a drink. (**for**)
8. A lie is an untrue statement made to deceive or mislead. (**with the intent of**)
9. We eat so that we can live, not live so that we can eat. (**to**)
10. Alison bought a house because she wanted to open a hotel. (**with a view to**)

### VARIOUS EXPRESSIONS FOR PURPOSE

We take blankets	<b>so that we can keep warm.</b>
We take blankets	<b>in order that we can keep warm.</b>
We take blankets	<b>in order to keep warm.</b>
We take blankets	<b>so as to keep warm.</b>
We take blankets	<b>to keep warm.</b>
We take blankets	<b>for keeping warm.</b>
We take blankets	<b>for warmth.</b>
We take blankets	<b>with a view to keeping warm.</b>
We take blankets	<b>with the intent of keeping warm.</b>
We take blankets	<b>for the purpose of keeping warm.</b>

## Bài 6 UNLESS

### UNLESS + V xác định = IF + V phủ định

+ Chú ý thì Present và thì Simple Past của động từ thường:

unless you go	=	if you don't go
unless she goes	=	if she doesn't go
unless he went	=	if he didn't go

+ Các trường hợp khác: chỉ thêm NOT hoặc bỏ NOT

unless he had gone	=	if he had <b>not</b> gone
if she were <b>not</b> ill	=	unless she were ill

A) Supply "if" or "unless": (if = "nếu" ; unless = "nếu... không")

1. He won't speak French ..... he goes to France.



2. I wouldn't have arrive on time ..... I'd missed the first train.
3. I'll go to the door ..... I hear the bell.
4. I shan't go to the door ..... I hear the bell.
5. .... he wrote to me, I'd write to him.
6. I won't write to him ..... he writes to me.
7. He will not learn much ..... he works harder.
8. He'll come ..... you ring the bell.
9. I will take the job ..... the pay is too low.
10. I will be back tomorrow ..... there is a plane strike.
11. I am going to work in the garden this afternoon ..... it rains.
12. I will be surprised ..... he doesn't have an accident soon.
13. She would look prettier ..... she didn't wear so much make-up.
14. .... you don't stop smoking, you will fall seriously ill.
15. You will not reach there in time ..... you start now.
16. .... I were rich, I would spend all my time traveling.
17. I will come and see you..... I have enough time tomorrow.
18. .... he does not find a good job, his family will starve.
19. .... you take better care of yourself, your health will improve.
20. .... you miss this opportunity, you will regret it.

**B) Use "unless" instead of "if" and vice versa :**

1. She will be late if she does not hurry.
2. The postman refused to deliver our letters unless we chained our dog up.
3. If you did not prepare your lessons you couldn't understand them in class.
4. We won't go out unless it stops raining.
5. Please go away; I can't work unless I am alone.
6. I won't come if she doesn't invite me.
7. I won't believe unless I see it.
8. You can't buy this property unless you are rich.
9. He won't speak to you if you don't ask him a question.
10. We couldn't hear unless you shouted.
11. They told her to sit down and keep quiet unless she wanted to get hurt.
12. Don't tell Ann what I said if she doesn't ask you.
13. You aren't allowed into club if you aren't a member.
14. He wouldn't go unless he had to.
15. The bus won't stop unless you press the button.
16. Don't bother to ring me if it isn't important.
17. Unless she pays the dues, her membership will not be renewed.
18. Unless it is very cold, we will probably not have snow.
19. I can't see unless I wear glasses.
20. If it didn't stop raining we would not have a picnic.
21. I wouldn't say that unless I believed it.
22. Don't leave the TV on if you aren't watching it.



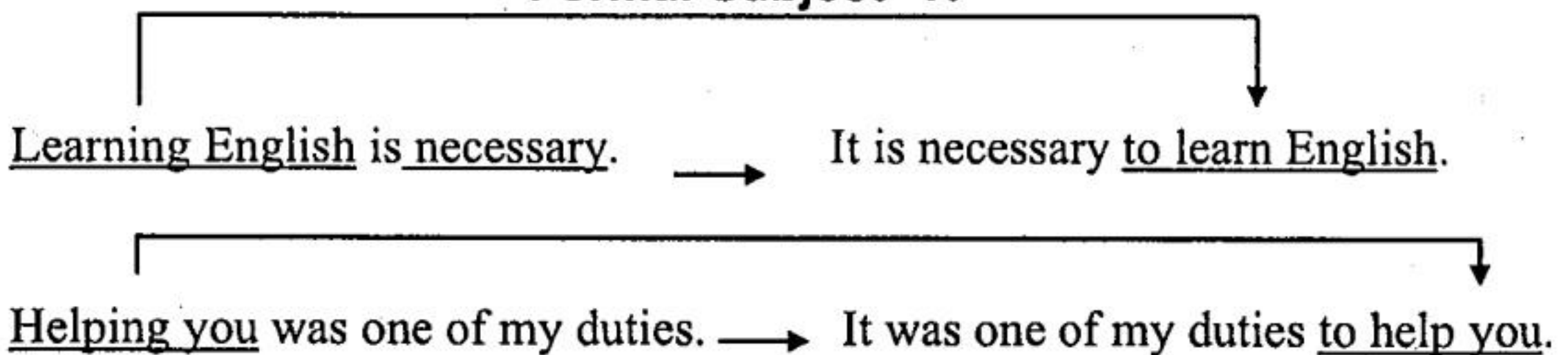
23. We can't do the job unless we get help.
24. It is impossible to keep up with the news unless you read the newspapers.
25. Unless you change your mind, I won't be able to help you.
26. If John does not change his working style, he will be sacked soon. (Đề thi TNPT Quốc gia 2015)

## Bài 7

# EMPTY "IT"

### LỚP 10

#### Formal Subject "IT"



**It is/was + Adj/Noun + to V**

1. Drinking wine is harmful to health. → It .....
2. To live with someone you dislike is not easy. → It .....
3. Doing that is a shame. → It .....
4. Serving the army is the duty of all young citizens. → It .....
5. In England, driving on the right is illegal. → In England, it .....
6. Telling lies is sometimes necessary. → It .....
7. Living alone was his tendency. → It .....
8. Doing morning exercises regularly is good for health. → It .....
9. To walk on this road at night was very dangerous. → It .....
10. Thinking carefully before you say something is wise. → It .....
11. Staying home to watch TV would be better. → It .....
12. I think making peace is more difficult than making war. → I think it is .....
13. Being on time is always very important. → It .....
14. Hurting a baby like that must be a crime. → It .....
15. Lying under the sun is not always a good thing. → It .....
16. Using a calculator would be better. → It .....
17. Breaking out of old habits isn't easy. → It .....
18. Lying on the beach is more pleasant than sitting in the office. → It .....
19. Formerly, women had difficulty getting academic jobs. → Formerly, it .....
20. A blind person cannot obtain a driving license. → It is impossible .....
21. I had no intention of offending anyone. → It wasn't .....



## LỚP 11 & 12

### Formal Subject "IT"

That everyone will die is true.      →      It is true that everyone will die.  
That he cannot come is a pity.      →      It is a pity that he cannot come.

**It is/was + Adj/Noun + that Clause**

1. That money doesn't grow on trees is true. → It .....
2. That this lazy boy failed the final test is no wonder. → It .....
3. That the weather will change is certain. → It .....
4. The fact that the earth turns around the sun is common knowledge. → It .....
5. He was so unhappy even though he was wealthy. This is strange. → It .....
6. How he managed to escape was a mystery. → It .....
7. When will the course be offered again? This is not sure. → It .....
8. There is life on any other planet? This is still doubtful. → It .....
9. Water runs downhill. This is a rule. → It .....
10. A normal newborn kangaroo weighs approximately 0.03 ounces (0.85 grams and is small enough to fit in a teaspoon. This is surprising. → It .....
11. Fortunately no passenger got injured in the accident. → It .....
12. Strangely enough, his mother seemed to be happy that he got arrested. → It ..

### Extra Object "IT"

**Subject + Verb + Adj/Noun + to V/ (that) Clause**

(find, think, make, consider, feel, prove, believe)

### EXAMPLES

1. Everyone finds **it** necessary to learn English. (Adj + to V)
2. He found **it** hard to accept orders from another. (Adj + to V)
3. I find **it** strange that you have so much free time. (Adj + that Clause)
4. Jane thinks **it** funny that I've taken up yoga. (Adj + that Clause)
5. I think **it** necessary to wait a few days. (Adj + to V)
6. We all thought **it** a pity so few people come. (Noun + [that] Clause)
7. I consider **it** important to begin the preparation at once. (Adj + to V)
8. Advertisements make **it** easy to sell more things to more people. (Adj + to V)
9. I make **it** my duty to protect animals. (Noun + to V)
10. The mayor made **it** clear that no money was available. (Adj + that Clause)

**Formal Subject IT, Extra Object IT,  
IT takes, IT is said that, IT is... since...**

1. Johnny spends two hours a day watching TV. → It .....



2. Standing on your head is not easy. → It .....
3. A great many people are involved in the use of English. This is true. → It .....
4. The Romans built this city in more than thirty years. → It .....
5. Everybody finds that taking care of children is a natural duty.  
→ Everybody .....(Xem trang 7, số 15)
6. Many young men don't think that letting their hair long is strange.  
→ Many young men .....(Xem trang 7, số 15)
7. Reading some pages in French before going to bed was a rule for him.  
→ It .....
8. Generally, half an hour is enough to write an ordinary letter. → It .....
9. Mt. Everest is known to be the highest mountain in the world. → It .....
10. People know that light goes faster than sound. → It .....
11. This man is known to have been trained in London. → It..... (Xem trang 53)
12. Working at the kitchen sink all day was dull for me. → I found .....
13. He always reads through a newspaper in approximately 15 minutes. → It .....
14. The last time I went shopping with her was two months ago.  
→ It ..... (Xem cuối trang 113)
15. I haven't eaten chocolate for years. → It .....
16. My responsibility is to wash the dishes and take out the garbage. → It .....
17. "Men build the house and women make it home". People believe this.  
→ It .....
18. Do you find that winning a gold medal at the SEA Games is impossible?  
→ Do you find .....
19. "Men build the house and women make it home". This is general belief.  
→ It .....
20. The Solar System consists of the sun at its center and nine planets moving  
around the sun on elliptical orbits. This is common knowledge. → It .....
21. Many young people find that choosing a career is important. → Many .....
22. The last time they visited Rome was two years ago. → It .....
23. She didn't intend to tell him what really happened. → It wasn't .....

## Bài 8

# TAG QUESTIONS

*Example: Mr. Brown works here, doesn't he?*

*Phần chính*

*Phần đuôi*

+ Dùng Pronoun ("he" thay vì "Mr. Brown")

+ Dùng TO BE (is, are,..) hoặc trợ động từ tùy theo phần chính

+ Luôn ở dạng rút gọn nếu là phủ định (*doesn't he* thay vì *does not he*)



+ Phần chính xác định - phần đuôi phủ định

Phần chính phủ định - phần đuôi xác định

(trừ trường hợp phần chính có từ mang nghĩa phủ định như: *never, no, none, no one, nobody, neither, seldom, hardly, scarcely, nothing, -đuôi xác định*)

+ something, nothing → it

+ everybody, everyone somebody, someone, nobody → they

+ I'm late, aren't I?

+ Let's go, shall we?

+ Request : "hãy" (+) : will you/won't you/ can't you?

"đừng" (-) : will you?

## PRACTICE:

1. Your mother loves football,.....?
2. You weren't listening,.....?
3. He won't mind if I go early,.....?
4. We shall have a holiday,.....?
5. I'm your friend,.....?
6. Nobody told you about it,.....?
7. Write to me soon,.....?
8. Everyone agrees with you,.....?
9. Nothing was said,.....?
10. Mr. Brown's children speak French,...?
11. I am not your enemy,.....?
12. Let's go out for a walk,.....?
13. Mary'd come if you asked her,.....?
14. We have to drive on the left,.....?
15. Our teacher can read Spanish books,.....?
16. You hardly love her,.....?
17. You've got a camera,.....?
18. She doesn't like onions,.....?
19. There are a lot of people here,.....?
20. Jack's applied for the job,.....?
21. You couldn't do me a favour,.....?
22. Someone saw you in the pub,.....?
23. Mr. Pike never has meals in the bed,.....?
24. That car is too expensive,.....?
25. Let's not talk in class,.....?
26. Tell me what happen,.....?
27. That isn't Tom,.....?
28. No salt is allowed,.....?
29. Neither of them complained,.....?
30. You found your passport,.....?

- |                  |                   |                 |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 30. didn't you?  | 29. did they?     | 28. is it?      | 27. is it?        |
| 26. will you?    | 25. shall we?     | 24. isn't it?   | 23. does he?      |
| 22. didn't they? | 21. could you?    | 20. hasn't she? | 19. aren't there? |
| 18. does she?    | 17. haven't you?  | 16. do you?     | 15. can't he?     |
| 14. don't we?    | 13. wouldn't she? | 12. shall we?   | 11. am I?         |
| 10. don't they?  | 9. was it?        | 8. don't they?  | 7. will you?      |
| 6. did they?     | 5. aren't I?      | 4. shan't we?   | 3. will he?       |
| 2. were you?     | 1. doesn't she?   |                 |                   |



## Bài 9

**CORRELATIVE CONJUNCTIONS****A NEITHER...NOR**

- + Nối hai phần **KHÁC** nhau. Phần khác nhau có thể ở đầu, ở giữa hay ở cuối
- + Bỏ "and" và "either" nếu có
- + Động từ trở về xác định
- + Lưu ý số ít, số nhiều của động từ (xem câu 5, 11, 12)

1. Mr. Bean wasn't late for the meeting. Mr. Sam wasn't late for the meeting.
2. Tom doesn't like mathematics and he doesn't hate mathematics, either.
3. They won't start on Saturday. They won't start on Sunday.
4. The government didn't forbid hunting and they didn't restrict hunting, either.
5. You aren't responsible for the bad result. I'm not responsible for them.
6. He didn't write and he didn't telephone, either.
7. Her husband doesn't speak English and her children don't speak English.
8. They don't have a refrigerator for their new apartment. They don't have a stove for their new apartment, either.
9. The result isn't good. The result isn't bad.
10. Mary hasn't got the time to go on holiday. And she hasn't got the money.
11. My sister is not here. My parents are not here.
12. My parents are not here. My sister is not here.
13. I can't sing, and I can't play the piano, either.
14. I don't love football. Neither does she.

**B NEITHER... NOR, BOTH ... AND,  
EITHER ... OR, NOT ONLY ... BUT (ALSO),  
AS WELL AS / WITH**

Khi nối 2 Subjects:

- both ... and: Verb số nhiều

- as well as

- with

- along with

- together with

- accompanied by

Verb số ít hoặc số nhiều tùy theo Subject **TRƯỚC**



- not only ... but (also)

- either ... or

- neither ... not

Verb số ít hoặc số nhiều tùy theo Subject SAU

1. My mother is here. My sister is here, too. (both ... and)
2. My mother is here. My sister is here. (not only ... but also)
3. Mary is at home. Her parents are at home, too. (as well as)
4. They can go swimming. They can play tennis. (either ... or)
5. He buys used cars. They buy used cars. (not only ... but also)
6. He buys used cars. He sells used cars. (not only ... but also)
7. John buys used cars. Tom buys used cars. (both ... and)
8. Her parents are at home. She is at home. (as well as)
9. Yesterday it rained. It snowed, too. (not only ... but also)
10. He is in love with her. I am in love with her. (both ... and)
11. My sister is going to England this summer. Or she is going to Ireland. (either... or)
12. My mother didn't attend the party on Sunday. Nor did my father. (neither... nor)
13. He likes dogs, so do I. (both... and)
14. I don't like cats, he doesn't either. (neither... nor)
15. I didn't want a cake or an apple. (neither... nor)
16. The chickens haven't been fed; the hen hasn't been fed. (neither... nor)
17. The moon gives us light at night. The stars gives us light at night. (as well as)
18. She carried the baby in her arms and she lulled him to sleep. (not only... but also)
19. You were mad or drunk. (either... or)
20. The mother is waiting for the vacation. Her children are waiting for it too. (together with)
21. You can find this book in the library or you can find it in a second-hand book shop. (either... or)
22. The boy is intelligent. He is also hardworking. (both... and)
23. My sister, and her daughters are visiting me next month. (along with)
24. Jim is on holiday and so is Carol. (both... and)
25. John doesn't smoke and he doesn't drink. (neither... nor)
26. You can take these tablets or you can seek a doctor's advice. (either... or)
27. The thief stole my money. He tore up my identify card. (not only... but also)
28. He spoke French fluently. He spoke French correctly. (both... and)
29. Jane should get a scholarship or she should work her way through medical school. (either... or)
30. The President and his wife are traveling to India. (accompanied by)
31. Senator Jones and his wife want to purchase the beach house. (along with)
32. Trees give us fruits. They also give us shade. (as well as)



# Bài 10

## EXCLAMATIONS

### (EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES)

<b>How</b>	<b>+ Adjective</b>	<b>+ Subject</b>	<b>+ Be</b>
	<b>+ Adjective</b>	<b>+ Subject</b>	<b>+ Verb</b>

Ex. *How beautiful she is.* (adjective)  
*How beautifully she dances.* (adverb)

<b>What</b>	<b>+ (a / an)</b>	<b>+ Adjective</b>	<b>+ Noun</b>	<b>(+ Subject + Verb)</b>
-------------	-------------------	--------------------	---------------	---------------------------

Không dùng **a / an** cho **Noun** số nhiều và **Noun** không đếm được  
 (lưu ý **advice, furniture, news, work**)

Ex. *What a beautiful girl (she is).* (singular [countable] noun)  
*What beautiful eyes she has.* (plural noun)  
*What beautiful girls (they are).* (plural noun)  
*What beautiful dancing she gives.* (uncountable noun)

### EXERCISE

1. \_\_\_\_\_ cold it is! (*How / What / What a / What an*)
2. \_\_\_\_\_ beautifully you sing! (*How / What / What a / What an*)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ rude man! (*How / What / What a / What an*)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ pleasant surprise! (*How / What / What a / What an*)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ lovely weather! (*How / What / What a / What an*)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ fool you are! (*How / What / What a / What an*)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ foolish you are! (*How / What / What a / What an*)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ lovely smile you have! (*How / What / What a / What an*)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ awful news! (*How / What / What a / What an*)
10. \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful music they are playing! (*How / What / What a / What an*)
11. \_\_\_\_\_ hard sentences these are! (*How / What / What a / What an*)
12. \_\_\_\_\_ amazing gift to give! (*How / What / What a / What an*)
13. The meal was excellent. - How.....! ; - What.....!
14. This meat is delicious. - How.....! ; - What.....!
15. These flowers are lovely. - How.....! ; - What.....!
16. She looks pale. - How.....!
17. She cooks well! - How.....! ; - What.....!
18. The car is expensive. - How.....! ; - What.....!
19. She has lovely eyes. - What.....!
20. These are hard sentences! - What.....! ; - How.....!
21. He manages the company badly! - How.....!



22. The moonlight is sweet. - How.....! What.....!
23. The weather is good at the moment. - How.....! ; - What.....!
24. This child was exceptional. - How.....! ; - What.....!

### ADVANCED

1. He drives carelessly! - How.....! ; - What.....!
2. She has lovely eyes. - How.....!
3. The advice you gave me was good! - What.....!
4. What you want is impossible. - What.....!
5. You can guess that they were happy - You can guess.....!
6. His feet are so big. - What.....!
7. It was kind of him to help the poor man. - How.....!
8. He gave her so many flowers. - What.....! (*Longman English Grammar §3.13*)
9. It's a pity your boyfriend couldn't come. - What.....!
10. It's nice to see you. - How.....!
11. Câu 85 cuối trang 205.

## Bài 11

# QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

+ **YES - NO QUESTIONS** Nhớ có đảo ngữ:

- to be (am, is, are, was, were)
- hoặc trợ ĐT (will, would, shall, should, can, could, has, have, had, may, might,...)
- hoặc mượn *Do, Does, Did*

} + **Subject**

+ **WH-QUESTIONS:**

- **Nhóm I:**

WHO  
WHAT  
HOW MANY (+ NOUN)  
HOW MUCH (+ NOUN)  
WHOSE (+ NOUN)  
WHICH

**WHO, WHAT... nếu là Subject** thì không có đảo ngữ. Nếu là **Object** thì có đảo ngữ.

- **Nhóm II:**

WHEN, WHERE, WHY,  
HOW, HOW LONG.  
HOW FAR, HOW FAST,  
HOW OFTEN, WHAT ... FOR  
etc.

**WHEN, WHERE... là Adverbs**, luôn luôn có đảo ngữ



**A. MAKE YES-NO QUESTIONS:**

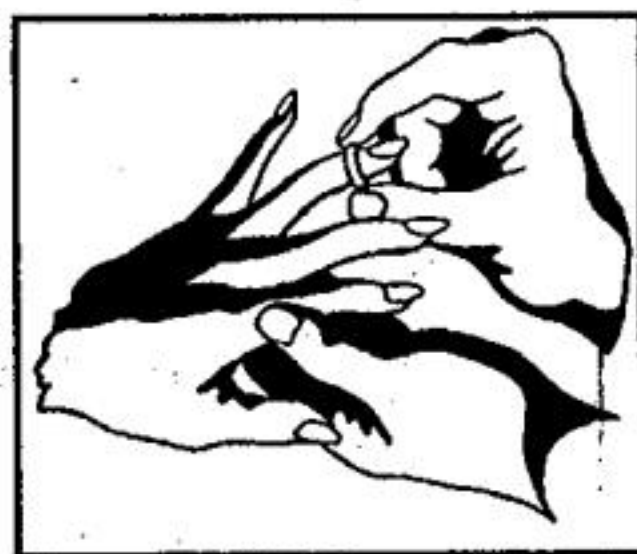
1. These boys are good at mathematics.
2. John has learned French for three years.
3. These pupils live far from school.
4. John speaks French very well.
5. We met him yesterday.
6. She talked to him yesterday.
7. Jenny has to quit school now.
8. They'd take a long trip to Hollywood.
9. Rice is grown in this country.
10. Horses run faster than dogs.

**B. MAKE WH- QUESTIONS:**

1. She wants cream in her coffee.
2. It will take about two hours to get to the city.
3. John phoned his teacher to ask for additional information.
4. Jane was washing her hair in the kitchen.
5. These surgeons have good knowledge of human anatomy.
6. It's two miles to the post office.
7. She's lived with her aunt since her mother died.
8. An explosion destroyed six houses last night.
9. They had to leave school because of financial problems.
10. He visits the art gallery occasionally.

**QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS****Text 1:**

Mary Foot and Charlie Philips fell in love at school. He gave her a ring when they left school. She wears it every day, and she's never taken it off. They got married in 2009 and they are still in love. They moved to Australia in 2014.



(Streamline English I, Unit 75)

**A. Make questions with the words provided:**

- |                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. when / fell / in love?    | 5. in what year / got married? |
| 2. who / gave her a ring?    | 6. they / still in love?       |
| 3. what / he gave her?       | 7. what country / moved?       |
| 4. she / ever / take it off? |                                |



**B. Answer the following questions:**

1. Did Mary and Charlie begin to love each other at school?
2. Does she have the ring with her all the time?
3. When did they become husband and wife?
4. Do they still love each other?
5. Have they lived in Australia since 2014?
6. What do you think about them?

**TEXT 2:**

Alice Hyde is ninety-seven years old and she always watches the Miss World competition on TV. She likes to remember the year 1911, when she became the very first Miss World. "It was wonderful. My picture was in the best magazine and on postcards. I received hundreds of letters. A lot of men wanted to marry me ! Best of all, Charlie Chaplin wrote from America and invited me to Hollywood. I really wanted to go there and be a film star, but my parents said no".

Questions:

1. What TV program does Alice Hyde always enjoy watching?
2. Was Alice Hyde working for the best magazines when she became the first Miss World?
3. What if she had accepted Charlie Chaplin's invitation?

**TEXT 3:**

Paper was invented by the Chinese in the first century A.D. The art of paper-making took 700 years to reach the Muslim world, and another 700 years to get to Britain.

Most paper is made from wood. When trees are cut down they are transported by land or water to paper mills. Here they are cut up and the wood is broken up into fibres, which are mixed with water and chemicals. This wood is then dried on a machine and made into paper.

Questions:

1. Did the Chinese find out the art of paper-making?
2. Was the art of paper-making brought to Britain in the first century?
3. What is used to make paper?
4. What does it mean by "transported by water"?
5. What do paper makers mix with water and chemicals?
6. What is the opposite of "dry"?



# Bài 12

## SO...THAT - SUCH... THAT

SO	+ adj. / adv.			(+ that + Clause)
SUCH	+ (a / an) +	(adj.)	+ NOUN	

- Không dùng **a / an** khi:
  - **Noun** số nhiều
  - **Noun** không đếm được (*lưu ý advice, furniture, news, work*)
- Ngoại lệ:
  - so many / so much = such a lot of
  - so far = such a long way
  - so long = such a long time

A. Nói các câu sau đây dùng “so ... that” hoặc “such ... that”:

1. He was very sick. He was sent to the hospital.
2. Mary has a very beautiful voice. We all like to hear her sing.
3. It was a very expensive car. We couldn't afford to buy it.
4. I was working hard. I forgot what the time was.
5. There were few people at the meeting. It was cancelled
6. They are big shoes I can't wear them.
7. David has too many girlfriends. He can't remember all of their names.
8. I've met a lot of people. I can't possibly remember all of their names.
9. He is a fool. He believed everything.
10. I couldn't understand her. She talked too fast.

B. Viết lại câu, thay “so” bằng “such” hoặc ngược lại:

1. The book was **so** good that I couldn't put it down. - It was .....
2. There are **so** many people in the room that we can't move. - There are .....
3. This exercise is **so** easy. - This .....
4. This is **such** good tea that I think I'll have another cup.
5. It took us **such** a long time to get home.
6. Why have you got **such** a lot of furniture here?
7. His feet are **so** big that he has difficulty finding shoes to fit him. - He has .....
8. This furniture is **so** old that it's not worth keeping.
9. It is **so** far from your house to the station.
11. The suitcase is **so** heavy that I can't carry it.
12. The road is **so** narrow that it is difficult for two cars to pass each other.
13. It was **such** rotten meat that it had to be thrown away.
14. The news was **so** bad that Helen burst into tears.
15. They had **such** a nice garden.



16. He owned **such** a lot of books that his walls were lined with bookcases.
17. She has **such** a good voice that we all like to hear her sing. - Her .....
18. He is **such** a slow speaker that his students get very bored. - He .....
19. I am not **such** a fool ! - I am not .....
20. Your children are **so** nice. - You .....

## ADVANCED

### I) INVERSION with **SO** and **SUCH** (Xem trang 19, các câu 38-48)

*The day was so hot that everybody went to the beach.*

*She loved John so much that she would not give him up.*

*The excitement was such that we all couldn't sleep.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ that everybody went to the beach.  
A. So hot was the day                      B. Such hot was the day  
C. So the day was hot                      D. Such a day was hot
2. \_\_\_\_\_ that she would not give him up.  
A. So much did she love John              B. Such she loved John  
C. So she loved John                      D. Such did she love John

*Used with the verb "be" and a noun, "such" means "so much" or "so great"*

3. \_\_\_\_\_ that we all couldn't sleep.  
A. Such was the excitement              B. So was the excitement  
C. Such an excitement that              D. So excitement was
4. Her grief was great, and she almost fainted. - So .....
5. He drove so carelessly that he caused four accidents in a week. - So .....
6. She loved her husband so much that she trusted him fully. - Such .....

### II) **SUCH A GOOD BOY = SO GOOD A BOY**

He was a big man. He could not sit in that chair.

= *He was such a big man that he could not sit in that chair.*

= *He was so big a man that he could not sit in that chair.*

1. The film was so bad that we left early. - (Use "**such**") It was .....  
- (Use "**so**" again) It was .....
2. He drives so carelessly that he often has accidents. - (Use "**such**") He .....  
- (Use "**so**" again) He ...
3. They had such a nice garden. - (Use "**so**") .....  
- (Use "**so**" again) .....
4. He was **such** a slow speaker that his students got very bored.  
- a) [Use so] He was so .....  
- b) [Use so again] He .....
5. He is **such** a fast runner that he beats us all. - a) [Use so] He is so .....  
- b) [Use so again] He .....
6. This is a high mountain. No pilot wants to fly over it.  
- a) [Use so... that] ..... ; - b) [Use such... that] .....  
- c) [Use so... that again] .....



**III) SOME IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS WITH "SO"**

1. I wish I could see him every day, not just \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. every so often    B. very so often    C. so very often    D. so every often
2. Don't forget to pack weather items appropriate for the climate: sunscreen, rain gear, and so on.  
A. and so like    B. and so forth    C. and so that    D. so and so
3. We want to hear you say, but if you make it short, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. so better and better    B. so much better  
C. so better than much    D. so much the better
4. **Paul:** I'm not sure about this soup. It tastes like something is missing.  
**Jack:** It tastes fine to me.  
A. I not think so    B. I don't think so    C. I think not so    D. I think not
5. **Betty:** We are expecting good weather. Do you think it will rain?  
**Helen:** Oh! \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. I don't hope so    B. I don't hope    C. It's hopeless    D. I hope not
6. We are half finished with our project. \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. It's so far good    B. So far, so good  
C. So good up now    D. To now so good
7. I looked death in the face, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. can speak so    B. so to speak    C. speaking so    D. so be spoken

**Bài 13****TOO... TO - ...ENOUGH TO**

+ TOO... TO	:	quá... đến nỗi không...
+ ENOUGH TO	:	đủ để...
+ TOO	:	đi trước Adj. / Adv.
+ ENOUGH	:	- đi sau Adj. / Adv. - đi trước Noun

**A. .Viết lại câu, dùng "too...to" hoặc "...enough to"**

- Lưu ý:** - 2 mệnh đề KHÁC Subject: thêm "for" (xem câu 1)  
- Subject của mệnh đề trước GIỐNG Object của mệnh đề sau: bỏ Object (xem câu 1)

1. This coffee is so hot that I can't drink it.
2. He is very tall and (he) can touch the ceiling.
3. You are so old that you could be my grandfather.
4. She was so excited that she couldn't sleep.
5. These shoes are so big that I can't wear them.
6. I have money. I can pay the bill.



7. The problem is so difficult that she can't explain it.
8. The man is very wise. No one can cheat him.
9. The man is very wise. He can't be cheated.
10. She was very foolish and she believed everything I told her.
11. I don't feel well. I cannot go to the station to meet him.
12. The fire isn't very hot. It won't boil a kettle.
13. The floor wasn't strong. We couldn't dance on it.
14. The package is very thick. I can't push it through the letterbox.
15. He is very impatient. He never listens to anyone.
16. It's not very dark. We can't see the stars clearly.
17. It was very hot. We could fry an egg on the pavement.
18. The oranges were very bitter (đắng). We couldn't eat them.
19. He was very drunk. He couldn't answer my question.
20. Would you be very kind and answer this letter by return?

**B. Viết lại câu, thay "too... to" bằng "...enough to" hoặc ngược lại:**

- Lưu ý:**
- TOO đi trước Adj./Adv  $\longleftrightarrow$  ENOUGH đi sau Adj./ Adv.
  - Verb xác định  $\longleftrightarrow$  Verb phủ định
  - Sử dụng các cặp từ trái nghĩa (Ex. *old*  $\longleftrightarrow$  *young*)

bad (adj.) – good	fertile – sterile
badly (adv.) – well	foolish – intelligent; smart
beautiful – ugly	hard (adj.) – easy
careful(ly) – careless(ly)	high – low
cheap(ly) – expensive(ly)	ill; sick – healthy
clean – dirty	impatient – patient
cold – hot; warm	lazily – diligently; hard *( <del>hardly</del> )
complex – simple	lazy – diligent
dangerous(ly) – safe(ly)	narrow – wide
deep – shallow	noisily – quietly
difficult – easy	noisy – silent
early – late *( <del>late</del> )	old – young; new
familiar – unusual; strange	short – tall; long
far – near	small – big; large
fast (adj.) – slow	strong(ly) – weak(ly)
fast (adv.) – slowly	useful – useless

1. Mark is too young to get married.
2. She drove too slowly to arrive on time.
3. He doesn't sing well enough to become a pop star.
4. The road is too dangerous for her to go at night.
5. The land is too sterile to grow crops.
6. Jack is too lazy to make progress in his study.



7. He is not young enough to wear this colored shirt.
8. He isn't strong enough to carry this bag.
9. The poem is too long for a child to memorize.
10. This online game isn't simple enough to learn in an afternoon.
11. We arrived too late to get good seats.
12. The road is not wide enough for two cars to pass each other.
13. Jimmy isn't tall enough to touch the ceiling.
14. He got up too late to catch the first train.
15. He doesn't drive carefully enough for us to feel safe.
16. The sun doesn't shine strongly enough for grass to grow.
17. The water was too cold to swim in.
18. His name isn't familiar enough to be remembered.
19. They didn't begin solving the problem early enough to meet the deadline.
20. The office was too far to walk to.

### ADVANCED

1. If only I were tall enough to play basketball. (Use **too... to**) - I .....
2. Because of the rough sea, the ferry couldn't sail.  
- a) [Use **so... that**] .....  
- b) [Use **too... to**] .....
3. John got up too late to catch the first train. - If .....
4. We couldn't leave home for school because of the heavy rain. (Use **too**)
5. Tom was very brave man, so all his friends admired him. (Use **enough**)
6. This luxurious car is too expensive for Mike to buy. (Use **enough**) - Mike ....
7. The news is so good that it cannot be true. - The news is too .....
8. The place was too bad to stay. - It was too ..... (Tương tự số II cuối trang 46)
9. This bag is too heavy for me to carry. - This is too .....
10. You've drunk too much already. - You've drunk more than .....
11. This tall man doesn't need to get on a chair when he changes a bulb. (Use **enough**) - This man .....
12. He can't afford to go to America this summer. - He doesn't .....
13. He had such a big head that he couldn't get shirts over his head. (Use **too**)
14. If I were young enough I would join the military and fight. (Use **too**)
15. I couldn't afford this car. - This car was .....
16. Don't use \_\_\_\_\_. (Tương tự số II cuối trang 46)  
A. such a knife sharp                      B. too sharp a knife  
C. a knife too sharpened                  D. so sharp knife
17. Stop. You've made enough of a mess already. (Xem trang 180)  
A. a number of    B. the number of    C. a variety of    D. a lot of
18. I have enough of him and do not want anything more to do with him. (Xem trang 180)  
A. I am fed up with him                      B. I need nothing more of him  
C. I know him very well                      D. I am satisfied with his behaviour



# Bài 14

## PASSIVE VOICE

### (1). PASSIVE VOICE CƠ BẢN

1. Tìm Object để làm Subject cho câu Passive:

- Object thường ở sau Verb.
- Chú ý:
  - + Object ngắn (câu 1, 2, 5)
  - + Object dài (câu 4, 16)
  - + Với "of" (Object dài) (câu 3, 8)

2. Thêm to be:

Nhóm	I PRESENT	II S. PAST	III PERFECT	IV CONTINUOUS	V MODAL VERBS
Thêm	am, is, are	was, were	been	being	be

3. Verb luôn luôn ở cột 3

4. Chú ý đôi khi có thay đổi:

am, is	← →	are
was	← →	were
has	← →	have
(had	← →	không đổi)

1. They open the shop at six o'clock.
2. We didn't remember her name.
3. The chief engineer was instructing all the workers of the plants.
4. Somebody has taken away some of my books.
5. They can't make tea with cold water.
6. They will hold the meeting before May Day.
7. The police are questioning him.
8. They have to repair the engine of that car.
9. Someone broke the window and took away some pictures. (2 passives)
10. People spend a lot of money on advertising every year.
11. They spend millions of dollars on advertising every year.
12. They had painted the house before we moved in.
13. They may use this room for the classroom.
14. The teacher is going to tell a story.
15. Mary is cutting the cake with a sharp knife.
16. The children looked at the woman with a red hat.
17. They have provided the victims with food and clothing.
18. People speak English in almost every corner of the world.
19. Everyone knows this fact very well.
20. You mustn't use this machine after 5.30 p.m.



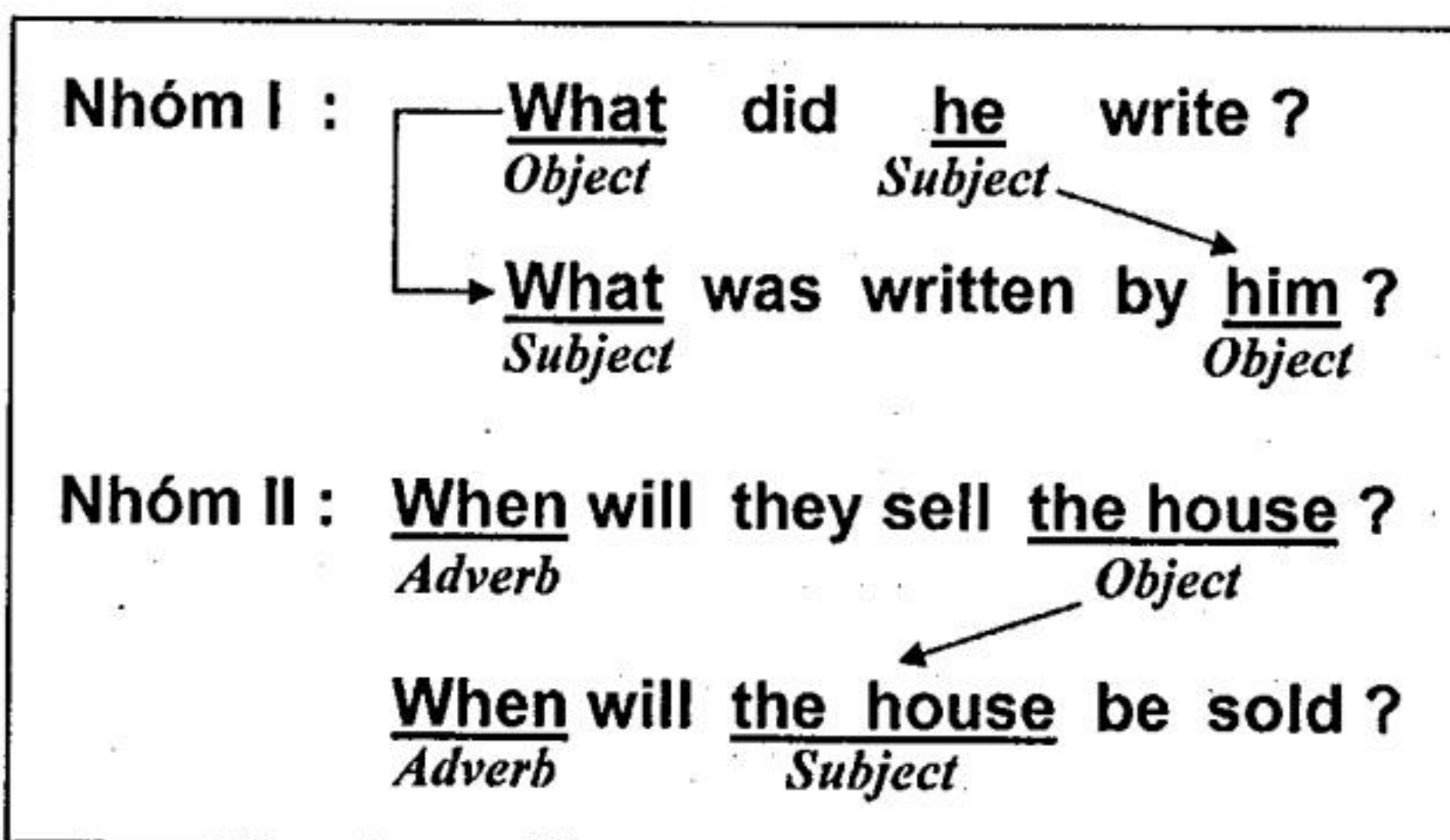
21. Don't speak until someone asks you.
22. Luckily for me, they didn't call my name.
23. Listen! The pupils are singing the national anthem.
24. They tell me that somebody has shot your uncle. (2 passives)
25. After class, one of the students always erases the chalkboard.
26. Someone's interviewing Dr. Johnson at the moment.
27. You must clean the wall before you paint it. (2 passives)
28. You must peel off the skins of the potatoes before you boil them. (2 passives)
29. Doctors advise us to exercise. (Xem giữa trang 4)
30. The terrorists made us lie down. (Xem giữa trang 4)
31. Someone saw him go into a shop. (Xem giữa trang 4)
32. Someone saw her looking into a shop. (Xem giữa trang 4)
33. No one helps me solve this problem. (Xem giữa trang 4)
34. They kept him waiting for half an hour. (Xem giữa trang 4)

## (2). PASSIVE VOICE VỚI CÂU HỎI YES-NO

Luôn có đảo ngữ: to be (am, is, are, was, were)  
hoặc trợ động từ đi trước Subject

1. Do they teach English here?
2. Will you invite her to your wedding party?
3. Did the teacher give some exercises?
4. Have they changed the windows of the laboratory?
5. Is she going to write a poem?
6. Is she making big cakes for the party?
7. Do they have to make a report every day?
8. Can anyone master a language in a short time?
9. Are our scientists taking photographs of the earth?
10. Does the gravity pull us down to the earth?

## (3). PASSIVE VOICE VỚI CÂU HỎI CÓ TỪ NGHI VẤN (WHAT, WHO, WHEN, WHY,...)





1. Why didn't they help him?
2. How many games has the team played?
3. Who invented the telephone?
4. Where do people speak English?
5. Who are they keeping in the kitchen?
6. Who designed this terrible evening-dress?
7. How can you open this shell?
8. What are they going to perform this weekend?
9. How do mosquitoes cause malaria?
10. When did Nguyễn Du write *The Tale of Kiều*?
11. How do we measure the speed of light?

#### (4). PASSIVE VOICE VỚI CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ CÓ 2 OBJECTS

give - offer - send - tell - show - pay - teach

- *Cách 1* : lấy Object người làm Subject

- *Cách 2* : lấy Object vật làm Subject (nhớ thêm TO)

1. The teacher gave each of us two exercise-books.
2. Someone will tell him that news.
3. They had sent enough money to these poor boys.
4. How much can you pay them?
5. They have given the women the right to vote.
6. They paid me a lot of money to do the job.
7. When I was living in Kuwait, my neighbor taught me Arabic.
8. The lawyer will give him the details of his uncle's will.

#### (5). PASSIVE VOICE VỚI "IT IS SAID THAT..."

say- believe- know- think- report - rumour- declare-  
accept- expect- agree- decide- discover- find- hope - estimate

Ex. (a):

They say that he is rich.  
                    present

Cách 1:

It is said that he is rich.

Cách 2:

He is said to be rich.  
                    V(3)      Infinitive

Ex. (b):

People believed that the earth stood still.

Cách 1:

It was believed that the earth stood still.

Cách 2:

The earth was believed to stand still.  
                                    Infinitive



**Ex. (c):** They reported that the troops were coming.  
**Cách 1:** It was reported that the troops were coming.  
**Cách 2:** The troops were reported to be coming.

**Ex. (d):** They think that he has died a natural death.  
**Cách 1:** It is thought that he has died a natural death.  
**Cách 2:** He is thought to have died a natural death.

*Perfect infinitive*

1. People believe that 13 is an unlucky number.
2. They rumoured that that man was still living.
3. They declared that she won the competition.
4. They know that English is an international language.
5. They reported that the army had crossed the frontier.
6. People think that Jack London's life and writings represent the American love of adventure.
7. They say that John is the brightest student in the class.
8. People believe that the Prime Minister and his wife are getting divorced.
9. They reported that the President had suffered a heart attack.
10. People knew that these men spoke the truth.
11. They expect that the strike will end soon.
12. People think that the company is planning a new advertising campaign.
13. People say that tortoises live longer than elephants.

## SỰ "LỆCH THÌ" TRONG CẤU TRÚC "IT IS SAID THAT..."

(Sách GK lớp 12 trang 73, câu 3)

They say Lan won a special prize.

→ It is said that Lan won a special prize.

→ Lan is said **to have won** a special prize.

1. People think that she works in a hospital. - It .....  
 - She .....
2. People know that he died in a battle. - It .....  
 - He .....
3. People believed that you lived in London. - It .....  
 - You .....
4. People say that Mr. Goldman gave nearly a million pounds to charity last year. (Đề thi ĐH - Khối D - 2013)
5. They report that the earthquake on 25 April 2015 in Nepal killed more than 7,500 people.
6. The estimation is that 7,500 people were killed.
7. They believe that the fire was caused by a short circuit in the lift machinery.



## (6). PASSIVE VOICE VỚI "CONTINUE" VÀ "BEGIN"

### ACTIVE

begin (s) (Present)

began (S. Past)

will begin (Future)

+ to-V<sub>(1)</sub>

### PASSIVE

begin (s)

began

will begin

(giữ nguyên thì)

+ to be + V<sub>(3)</sub>

They begin to understand him.

→ *He begins to be understood.*

1. We'll continue to use this computer.
2. They began to plant rubber trees in big plantations.
3. People can continue to enjoy natural resources.
4. Someone begins to open the bottles.
5. Someone begins to sing that song.
6. People will continue to drink Coca-Cola in the 21st century.
7. American people begin to love football.
8. People began to throw stones and bottles at the policemen.

## (7). PASSIVE VOICE VỚI "PAY ATTENTION TO"

- Có 2 Object

- "attention" là danh từ không đếm được (luôn ở số ít).

They have to pay much attention to this problem.

Cách 1 : *Much attention has to be paid to this problem.*

Cách 2 : *This problem has to be paid much attention to.*

1. Most boys and girls paid little attention to literature.
2. You must pay attention to your behavior.
3. They didn't pay much attention to him.
4. They'll pay attention to new agricultural methods.
5. The average shopper pays little attention to cheap nutritious foods.
6. We must pay careful attention to both word choice and word arrangement.
7. People are paying particular attention to the problems of environmental pollution.

## (8). PASSIVE VOICE VỚI PHRASAL VERB

1. They gave up the search after three hours.
2. Someone should look into the matter.
3. Don't speak until someone speaks to you.
4. Police had to break the meeting up.
5. Have they sent for the doctor?
6. A neighbour is looking after the children.
7. They threw away the rest of the food.



8. Your story brings back pleasant memories.
9. Natural disasters bring about all sorts of misfortunes.
10. The tidal wave wiped out three small fishing villages.
11. When I returned I found that they had towed my car away.
12. People must hand in their weapons.
13. People often take him for his brother.
14. They will have to pull down this old skyscraper.

**MỘT SỐ PHRASAL VERBS (TRANSITIVE) THƯỜNG GẶP  
TRONG BÀI TẬP PASSIVE VOICE**

<b>ask for</b>	: xin	<b>pick out</b>	: chọn, lựa
<b>bring about</b>	: dẫn đến, gây ra	<b>point out</b>	: chỉ ra, vạch ra
<b>bring back</b>	: đem về, gửi lại	<b>put off</b>	: hoãn lại
<b>bring up</b>	: nuôi dưỡng	<b>put out</b>	: dập tắt
<b>call for</b>	: đòi hỏi	<b>put on</b>	: mặc vào, mang vào
<b>call on</b>	: thăm	<b>put up with</b>	: chịu đựng
<b>carry out</b>	: thực hiện	<b>put away</b>	: cất đi
<b>catch up with</b>	: theo kịp, đuổi kịp	<b>save up</b>	: tiết kiệm
<b>eat up</b>	: huỷ hoại dần	<b>speak to</b>	: nói với
<b>fill in</b>	: điền vào	<b>talk to</b>	: trò chuyện với
<b>find out</b>	: tìm ra, khám phá	<b>take over</b>	: tiếp quản
<b>give up</b>	: ngưng, thôi	<b>take away</b>	: lấy đi
<b>give out</b>	: phát ra, loan báo	<b>take care of</b>	: chăm sóc
<b>hand in</b>	: nộp, giao	<b>take up</b>	: giới thiệu, thảo luận
<b>look after</b>	: chăm sóc	<b>turn in</b>	: nộp giao
<b>look at</b>	: nhìn	<b>turn off</b>	: tắt đi
<b>look for</b>	: tìm kiếm	<b>turn on</b>	: bật lên
<b>look into</b>	: xem xét, điều tra	<b>tear down</b>	: phá huỷ
<b>look on</b>	: coi là	<b>tear up</b>	: xé nát
<b>look up</b>	: tra cứu	<b>throw away</b>	: ném đi, vứt bỏ
<b>pick up</b>	: đón, bắt, quở trách	<b>wipe out</b>	: lau sạch, phá sạch

(Xem thêm Bài 36 *Phrasal Verbs*, trang 145)

**(9). PASSIVE VOICE – ADVANCED LEVEL**

1. That factory is producing *more and more* pollution. (*quantity*)
2. Wait here until someone tells you to come in. (*request*)
3. Someone is giving her *plenty of* encouragement (*quantity*)
4. We have to *clean* and *paint* the window. (*2 verbs*)
5. We have to *clean the floor* and *paint the windows*. (*2 verbs, 2 objects*)
6. *You must clean the wall* before *you paint it*. (*2 clauses*)
7. They *are building* the bridge and *will finish* it soon. (*different tenses*)



8. One cannot *see* or *taste* an odourless gas. (2 verbs)
9. They have found *all of* the misplaced money. (quantity)
10. *They thought* him to be a brilliant scientist. (2 answers)
11. People *knew* that she *lost* the game.
12. People *know* that they *lost* the game. (different tenses)
13. When the mother was ill, the neighbours looked after the children.
14. They didn't say much. (negative verb + many / much / anyone / anything)
15. You cannot gain anything unless you try harder. (negative verb + many / much / anyone / anything)
16. We are going to send a young man who can swim well. (Relative Clause)
17. Nobody makes tea with cold water. (nobody / nothing as subject)
18. You must have this letter rewritten. (Causative Form)
19. Nothing can make me change my mind. (nobody / nothing as subject)
20. Although speaking Chinese all over the world, people don't consider it an international language. (Participle Phrase)
21. They had the tickets sold out every day. (Causative Form)
22. We can't do much work in such limited time. (negative verb + many / much / anyone / anything)
23. They are making rockets that are very powerful. (Relative Clause)
24. We don't know much about life outside the earth. (negative verb + many / much / anyone / anything)
25. I really must have my watch repaired. (Causative Form)
26. Formerly, people had letters carried by pigeons. (Causative Form)
27. He likes people to call him 'sir'. (passive infinitive)
28. She doesn't want anyone to take advantage of her. (passive infinitive)
29. He hates people photographing him. (passive gerund)
30. It is impossible to do this. (Lưu ý impossible) (This...)
31. It is time to shut up the door. (2 answers)
32. Snow covered the ground. (cover / fill ... + special preposition)
33. Light filled the room. (fill / cover ... + special preposition)
34. Don't let others see you. (passive reflexive) (Don't let...)
35. I can't let people take me away. (passive reflexive) (I can't let...)
36. I hate people laughing at me. (Verb Forms)
37. I've used this pen only once since the day I had it mended. (2 clauses, Causative Form)
38. You don't need to wind this watch. (passive infinitive)
39. You order me about and I am tired of it. (prepositional object)
40. Before they invented printing, people had to write everything by hand. (2 clauses)
41. No parking. (Parking is ...)
42. They shouldn't have told him. (Modal Perfect)
43. Get someone to mend it. (Causative Form)
44. How many eggs did our hen lay last week? (irregular verb)



45. We must endure what we cannot cure. (*What...*)
46. Nobody has made any mistakes. (*nobody / nothing as subject*)
47. They used to make little boys climb the chimneys to clean them. (*2 clauses, lưu ý make*)
48. People expect that these boys will become good. (*It is...*)
49. They had not moved anything in that room. (*negative verb + many / much / anyone / anything*)
50. *It is your duty* to make tea at eleven o'clock. (*Use "supposed"*)
51. When I was a child, my father never let me to play with the children next door. (*Xem ví dụ 2 giữa trang 4*)
52. Can you make people understand you in French? (*Can you make....*)
53. They continue to make him work on Sunday. (*Xem đầu trang 54*)
54. After arresting him, the police brought him back to London. (*Participle Phrase*) (*After.....*)
55. Because of the development of birth-control methods, women could delay having children or avoid having them altogether. (*Because...*) (*development [n.] → develop [v.]*)
56. They have had this sign exposed for a long time. (*Causative Form*)
57. I don't like people looking at me when I am speaking. (*passive gerund*)
58. They didn't find anyone to replace her. (*negative verb + anyone*)
59. You don't need to correct these sentences. (*need – 2 ways*)
60. They may get rid of me someday and I am afraid of it. (*phrasal verb + passive gerund*)
61. They have done away with the old rules. (*phrasal verb + passive gerund*)
62. Everybody considers it a shame. (*consider*)
63. He let others cheat him. (*passive infinitive*) (*He let...*)
64. It's time you threw these silly things away. (*It's time...*)
65. I remember one of my friends telling me that story. (*remember + V-ing*)
66. It surprised me to hear someone had robbed you. (*2 ways: It... ; That...*)
67. Because of the leaking of the news, our opponents had upper hands on us. (*Như câu 49*)
68. These young men seem to have stolen my chicken when I was out. (*passive perfect infinitive*)
69. Do you really need to have your house decorated again? (*Does...*)
70. I wondered what they were checking down there. (*I wonder ...*)
71. Someone took me there when I was young. I recall that. (*recall – xem tr. 3*)
72. We are to check all systems as soon as possible. (*infinitive passive*)
73. They are to make a decision soon. (*infinitive passive*)
74. There is so much to do. (*infinitive passive*) (*There is...*)
75. The land is too poor to grow anything. (*infinitive passive*) (*The land...*)
76. I suggest rewriting the report. (*I suggest that...*)
77. Carrots can improve eyesight. This is common knowledge. (*It is...*)



## Bài 15

# ACTIVE VOICE

---

Cách đổi **Passive Voice** sang **Active Voice**:

- Tìm phần **by** + **Object** làm **Subject** (hoặc mượn **They/ People**)
- Bỏ **am, is, are, was, were, been, being, be**.
- Chia động từ cho **đúng thì**.
- Lấy **Subject** của câu **Passive** làm **Object** của câu **Active** (đặt ngay sau động từ)
- Chép các từ còn lại nếu có.

1. This house was built 100 years ago.
2. Rome was not built in a day.
3. These artificial flowers are made of silk.
4. The lesson is being written by the students now.
5. This job has to be done at once.
6. The animals at the zoo are fed twice a day.
7. The operation is going to be performed by French doctors.
8. All the arrangements have been made.
9. Someone will have to be found to take her place.
10. English is spoken in many parts of the world.
11. The villagers will be invited to attend the meeting.
12. Evening dress ought to be worn.
13. Our salary was going to be increased.
14. When was this radio manufactured?
15. The rice-fields will have been ploughed by the end of this month.
16. Good progress has been made by John in his studies.
17. This computer is exported to seventy different countries.
18. They couldn't be found anywhere.
19. These boys aren't taught by Mrs. Jones.
20. Nothing had been moved until the police arrived.
21. Is mathematics taught in this school?
22. I wasn't introduced to any of the guests at the party last night.
23. The vocabulary list is being memorized by all of the students.
24. Mike has been offered the opportunity to study abroad.
25. Fortunately, the machinery wasn't damaged by the accident.
26. Before we arrived, the dog had been chained to the fence in the yard.
27. Please wait here while your luggage is being examined.
28. Look! The seals are being fed.
29. The results of the contest are going to be announced.
30. The hotel guests should have been supplied with clean towels.



- 31. Was the telephone invented by Thomas Edison?
- 32. How are candles made?
- 33. It is known that English is the most popular language.
- 34. It was decided that the company would be closed in December.
- 35. Lessons should be made more interesting.
- 36. Why wasn't I told about it before?
- 37. She felt that something was being concealed (che giấu) from her.
- 38. Letters used to be carried by pigeons.
- 39. He was expected to return shortly. (shortly [adv.] = soon)
- 40. I have never been treated with such kindness. - a) They...; b) Nobody...

# Bài 16

## USE, USED TO, BE USED TO

USE (dùng)	+ NOUN
BE USED TO (quen với) GET USED TO (trở nên quen với)	+ V-ing hoặc NOUN
USED TO (trước kia thường làm)	+ V(1)

**Lưu ý:** USED TO tương đương với thì **Simple Past**. Ba trường hợp kia **phải chia thì** cho phù hợp.

**Ghi chú thêm:**

- a) USE = “ DÙNG” (như các ĐT thường khác: use, uses, used, will use, have used, don't use, doesn't use, didn't use)
- b) USED TO + Verb nguyên mẫu = “trước kia thường làm”  
*Phủ định:* didn't use to ; *Nghi vấn:* Did + Subj. + use to ?
- c) **BE** USED TO + Verb- ING hoặc NOUN = “quen”, “quen với”

am, is, are, was, were, will be,...

**A. Chọn a, b, c, hoặc d cho phù hợp vào chỗ trống:**

- 1. He ..... stop for gas at this filling station.  
a. is used to      b. used to      c. use      d. uses
- 2. I often ..... this pen to write my lessons, but yesterday I used your pen.  
a. am used to      b. used to      c. used      d. use
- 3. I .....this weather in this region.  
a. am used to      b. used to      c. used      d. use
- 4. These children .....working in a noisy room.  
a. didn't used to      b. aren't used to      c. didn't use to      d. isn't used to



5. I .....this book for years.  
 a. will be used to    b. have been used to    c. will use    d. have used

**Em có nhận xét gì?**

- |  |   |                                |
|--|---|--------------------------------|
| + trước <b>Verb nguyên mẫu</b> (câu 1) | : | Dùng .....                     |
| + trước <b>Verb-ing</b> (câu 4)        | : | Dùng .....                     |
| + trước <b>NOUN</b> (câu 2,3,5)        | { | ("quen với") : Dùng .....      |
|  |   | ("dùng, sử dụng") : Dùng ..... |

**B. Điền vào chỗ trống bằng USE, USED TO hoặc BE USED TO và thực hiện những thay đổi cần thiết (ở động từ):**

- I don't know how ..... this computer.
- I .....live in Finland, but now I live in Thailand.
- When I was a child, I ..... play games with friends in a big field near my house after school every day.
- The European tourists ..... not..... hot weather.
- We .....reading books and magazines in English.
- Paul and Mary ..... meet each other on Saturdays.
- We..... hard work.
- They ..... work hard.
- He ..... hard working.
- People..... believe the world was flat.
- A teacher..... answering questions. Students, especially good students, always have a lot of questions.
- There ..... be an apple tree at this place.
- Tom ..... not .....go out very often until he met Ann.
- She ..... be my best friend but we aren't friends any longer.
- What is the telescope (kính viễn vọng) ..... for?
- No one can ..... separation. (sự chia ly)
- They..... not ..... dogs to plough fields.
- How much coal did we ..... last winter?

**C. Bài tập khó hơn:**

*Có dùng thêm* **get used to + Verb-ing / Noun** (= "trở nên quen với...")

- There .....(be) a cinema at this corner but it was knocked down.
- Jack got tired very quickly. He ..... (not run) so fast.
- It took me a long time..... (wear) glasses.
- I ..... (like) Anne, but now she gets on my nerves.
- In Vietnam, Europeans have to ..... (handle) chopsticks.
- She ..... this old car for ages when she met that rich man who asked for her hand.
- We ..... the noise of the airplane now.
- He doesn't like that small town, but I believe he ..... it soon.



## TRANSFORMATION

- Ở bài tập biến đổi câu, nên lưu ý những từ gợi ý "quen làm / không quen làm" (bài làm dùng *be used to*) như **strange** (xa lạ), **usual** (thường), **unusual** (khác thường, xa lạ), **confusing** (gây bối rối), **difficult** (khó khăn).

- Cũng lưu ý các chi tiết gợi ý "trước kia thường làm" (bài làm dùng *used to*) như thì **S.Past**, **no longer** (không còn nữa), **not. . . any more** (không còn nữa) . . .

1. He gets up early in the morning and he's used to it. - He .....
2. There were some trees in this field. - There .....
3. Their customs are strange to him. - He .....
4. I often have a lot of homework every day, so it's nothing unusual. - I .....
5. John smoked cigarette when he was a young boy. - John .....
6. People do not live in the castle any more. - People .....
7. He always fed the animals with difficulty. - He .....
8. No longer does my mother do washing by hand. - My mother .....
9. I find British traffic conditions very strange and confusing. - I .....
10. I was made to work on Sunday, but I'm not now. - I .....
11. My brother jogs without shoes. He is not strange to it at all. - My brother .....
12. It's no problem for me to work with noisy children. - I .....
13. They lived on a farm once, but they don't any more. - They .....
14. The city is less beautiful now than before. - The city is less beautiful .....
15. People no longer smoke so many cigarettes as before. - People no longer smoke so many .....
16. There was an apple tree in the front part of the yard, but it was struck by lightning one night. - There .....

## ADVANCED

Đôi khi *would* được dùng thay cho *used to* để chỉ việc thường làm trong quá khứ. Bản văn thường liệt kê nhiều hành động liên tiếp nhau:

1) *When I was a boy we always spent (or used to spend) our holidays on a farm We would get up at 5 and we would help milk the cows Then we would return to the farm kitchen, where we would eat a huge breakfast.* (Longman English Grammar Practice § 11.11C).

2) *Tom and Ann were a young married couple. Every morning Tom would kiss Ann and set off for work. Ann would stand at the window and wave goodbye. In the evening she would welcome him home and ask him to tell her about his day.* (A Practical English Grammar §162. B.2).



# Bài 17

## RELATIVE CLAUSES

### (ADJECTIVE CLAUSES)

---

#### **EXERCISE 10:**

1. The man didn't come back again. I shouted at him.
2. They built a wall. It fell down after three weeks.
3. There's the lady. The robbers have kidnapped her son.
4. I asked a policeman. He wasn't very helpful.
5. The student has bad study habits. Our teacher wants to talk to his parents this week.
6. The boys helped me to carry the bags. I tipped them.
7. The tree has lovely flowers. This tree stands near the gate.
8. I enjoyed the music. We listened to it after dinner.
9. Do you know the people? They live in the white house.
10. We are going to see a famous actress. You can see her picture on the front page of "*The Times*."
11. They sent a new teacher. We really like her.
12. The children need our help. Their parents are poor and unemployed.
13. The teacher has a good voice. I can never remember the teacher's name.
14. Buy it back from the woman. You sold it to her.
15. The cat was sitting on the window-sill. Her name is Molly.
16. Is this the magazine? You were talking about it just now.
17. The policeman is at the door now. You knocked off his helmet.
18. Here comes the girl. I'm hiding from this girl.
19. The pretty girl slapped my boyfriend's face yesterday. You were speaking to her in the library.
20. The dead flowers smell awful. You put them in the vase ten days ago.
21. The man is deaf. You spoke to this man this morning.
22. I must thank the people. I got a present from them.
23. The waitress was friendly. She served us dinner.
24. Are these the new shops? You pointed them out to me last week.
25. She lives in a wretched house. You may call it a hut.
26. The woman phoned Dr. Clark. A bee attacked her little son in the garden.
27. The children are disabled orphans. She is taking care of these children.
28. **Boys often do not like the girls. These girls have a tattoo on their body.**
29. I'll introduce you to the man. His support is necessary for your project.
30. The disabled boy is my cousin. You always make fun of him cruelly.
31. Is this the style of hair? Your wife wants to have it.
32. Be sure to follow the instructions. They are given at the top of the page.



33. The film is about two people. Their plane crashed into the jungle.
34. Jane opened the letter. She received it this morning.
35. On returning from a trip, he told me stories. I didn't believe them at all.
36. **Parents usually consider themselves fortunate. Their children do well in school.**
37. The bed has no mattress. I sleep on this bed.
38. There wasn't any directory in the telephone box. I was phoning from it.
39. This is the story of a man. His wife suddenly loses her memory.
40. The road is in bad condition. It leads to the city center.
41. The secretary is very talented. Mr. King has employed her.
42. The man is over sixty. His daughter has just been born.
43. The house will soon be sold. It stands at the end of the road.
44. The conference was about globalization (toàn cầu hóa). It was planned by non-governmental organizations (các tổ chức phi chính phủ, thường viết tắt là NGO).
45. The problem will be essential for your exam. It was discussed yesterday.
46. The girl looks disappointed. Her examination result is so bad.

### **EXERCISE 11&12:**

- 1) WHOSE + Noun (xem câu 4)
- 2) WHY thay cho "for this reason". Nếu không có giới từ **for**: phải dùng WHICH (xem câu 29)
- 3) Từ chỉ số lượng + OF WHOM / OF WHICH (và có dấu phẩy) (many of, much of, several of, one of, two of, some of, (a) few of, most of, all of, each of, any of, both of, either of, neither of...) (xem câu 12, 27, 37...)
- 4) Khi 2 mệnh đề KHÔNG CÓ phần giống nhau: WHICH thay cho cả mệnh đề (xem câu 5, 54...).
- 5) Dùng THAT khi:
  - + Thay cho cả người và vật (xem câu 11, 56)
  - + Sau so sánh "nhất" (xem câu 15, 19...)
- 6) Không dùng THAT:
  - + Sau dấu phẩy
  - + Sau giới từ
- 7) WHERE: nơi chốn (nhớ bỏ giới từ on, in, at nếu có)
- 8) WHEN: thời gian (nhớ bỏ giới từ on, in, at nếu có)
- 9) Ôn lại cách dùng dấu phẩy trong Non-defining Relative Clauses.

- ✱ The student is from China. He sits next to me. ✓
- ↓ 2. This student is a genius. He scored 100 on the exam.
3. I thanked the woman. This woman had helped me. ✕
4. The professor is excellent. I am taking his course. ✕
5. Jim passed the exam. This surprised everybody. ✕
6. The man is my father. I respect this man most. ✕
7. Mr. Smith said he was too busy to speak to me. I had come to see Mr. Smith. ✕
8. The book was fascinating. You gave me the book.
9. The man is my father. I respect his opinions most. ✕
10. The book *War and Peace* was fascinating. You gave me the book.



11. I saw a lot of people and horses. They went to market. ✕
12. Tom has three sisters. All of them are married. ✕
13. I recently went back to Paris. It is still as beautiful as a pearl. ✕
14. I recently went back to Paris. I was born in Paris nearly fifty years ago. ✕
15. She is the most intelligent woman. I've ever met this woman. ✕
16. This doctor is famous. You visited him yesterday. ✕
17. Sunday is the day. I am least busy on Sunday. ✕
18. Do you know the music? It is being played on the radio. ✕
19. The tallest building is the 828-metre Burj Khalifa in Dubai. I have seen this building.
20. The Titanic is the subject of a recent movie. It sank in April 1912.
21. The police want to know the hotel. Mr. Foster stayed there two weeks ago.
22. You didn't tell us the reason. We have to cut down our daily expense (sự chi tiêu) for that reason.
23. The day was rainy. She left on that day.
24. The reason hasn't been told yet. The president will come here for this reason.
25. Florida attracts many tourists every year. It is known as the Sunshine State.
26. She couldn't come to the party. This was a pity.
27. I've sent him two letters. He has received neither of them.
28. That man is an artist. I don't remember the man's name.
29. The reason is not valid. You gave it yesterday.
30. We enjoyed the city. We spent our vacation in this city.
31. One of the elephants had only one tusk. We saw these elephants at the zoo.
32. This place is not safe. You'd like to visit this place.
33. I looked at the moon. It was very bright that evening.
34. This statue belongs to a rich family. Its eyes were made of diamonds.
35. My father goes swimming every day. You met him this morning.
36. That car belongs to Dr. Clark. Its engine is very good.
37. In the class there are 48 students. The teacher knows only a few of them.
38. The pupils haven't done their homework. It is too bad.
39. We first met in 1945. The revolution (cuộc cách mạng) took place then.
40. A man from our village was on TV last night. I study with his son.
41. Jim is one of my closest friends. I have known him for ten years.
42. Peter works for a factory. It makes motorbikes.
43. I wish to come back to the town. I went to school with my sister there.
44. She tried on three skirts. She decided to buy none of them.
45. She couldn't pay her school fees. I didn't know the reason.
46. These houses were destroyed by the storm. Their walls were made of wood.
47. October is the month. The daytime is shorter in October.
48. The girl is very poor. He fell in love with this girl.
49. I'm planning to grow roses. I find roses quite beautiful.
50. We live in a small town. It has a large population.
51. I found a chair. Its legs were broken.



52. Thirty people were killed in the ferry accident (tai nạn đắm phà). Half of them are women and children.
53. This actor is going to marry one of the world's top models. We've enjoyed his performance several times.
54. Sue and Tom spent the whole time watching TV. Their mother disliked this.
55. Japan suffers from a lot natural disasters every year. Japan consists of four main islands.
56. The bike and its rider were taken to the police station. They had run over an old man.
57. The others were playing a game. I couldn't understand its rules.
58. The earth receives only a small part of the sun's total radiation (bức xạ). The earth is 93 million miles from the sun.
59. **Makeup masks the true and natural beauty of high school girls. They are still young and have years ahead before needing to hide the scars of time.**
60. Einstein discovered relativity. He failed his university entrance exam.
61. The girls and flowers were vivid. He painted them.
62. My mother is thinking of opening a restaurant. She is an excellent cook.
63. Do you know the building? The windows of the building are painted green.
64. The sun heats the earth. This is very important to us.
65. The stories and people attract my interest. They appear in this novel.
66. The villa had beautiful views of the mountain. We stayed at this villa.
67. The museum is located near the central station. We visited this villa.

## Reduction of Relative Clauses

X: 2 lần

*A) Rewrite the following sentences  
using present participle, past participle or to-infinitive*

1. The man who drives the bus is my uncle.
2. The problem that was discussed yesterday will be essential for your exam.
3. A picture that shows the image of a person is a portrait.
4. Animals that eat plants are called herbivores.
5. Yesterday I read a book which was written by Hemingway.
6. A girl who works at a pub has won a lottery.
7. I've just read a book that was entitled The Old Man and the Sea.
8. Kids who play in the streets may get run over.
9. My mother is always the first one who gets up in the morning.
10. The teacher punishes anyone who breaks the rules.
11. Kent Jones was the last witness who was called. (Xem trang 6, số 8)
12. The first person who spoke at the conference was an expert on metals.
13. Newton was the first person who understood gravity.
14. Did you watch the film which I recommended to you?
15. The people that you met at the party are all old friends of mine.
16. People who are invited are expected to be formally dressed for the occasion.
17. The scientists who were attacked by a polar bear last night are safe now.



18. He was the only one that finished the course.
19. Many countries suffer from deforestation that is caused by tourism.
20. He wasn't the only reporter who questioned the official line.
21. The book that my sister recommended was quite useful.
22. English has an alphabet that consists of 26 letters.
23. I'm excited about the holidays that are going to come. (Xem trang 7, số 22)
24. Students who don't practice their English don't improve very quickly.
25. The amount of destruction that is caused by an earthquake (trận động đất) depends on where it happens, what time it happens, and how strong it is.
26. He was the second man who was killed in this way.
27. The professor whom you spoke yesterday is not here today.
28. Philip bought a camera which has three lenses.
- ~~29.~~ The book which I found last week contains some useful information.
- ~~30.~~ This is the book that I have been looking for all year.
31. The pilot was the only man who survived the crash.
32. The guys that were caught by the police are now in jail.
33. It was the first book that sold a million copies.
34. If I have to choose, I prefer food which is made at home.
35. He smiled, imagining all the beautiful days which are going to come.
36. The man who is being taken away by the police is our neighbor.
37. Trees which fell in the storm have resulted in several accidents.
38. Marie Curie is the only person that won a Nobel prize in two different disciplines (ngành học).
- ~~39.~~ The man with whom she had lunch yesterday is her boss.
40. **The fragrance always stays in the hand that gives the rose.** (*Hương thơm luôn phảng phất nơi bàn tay trao tặng đóa hồng – Hada Bejar*)
- ~~41.~~ **Do not do to others the thing that you do not want done to yourself.** (*Đừng làm cho người khác điều mà mình không muốn người khác làm cho mình – Kỷ sở bất dục, vật thi ư nhân. – Khổng Tử*)
42. **Đề thi ĐH Khối A1, 2013:**  
Books and magazines \_\_\_\_\_ around made his room very untidy.  
A. that lie      B. laying      C. which lied      D. lying
- (Cf. *A Practical English Grammar* §77, A. 2):
43. English is an important language that we should learn.
44. He has a lot of books that he can/must read.
45. She had something that she could do/had to do.
46. They need a garden that they can play in.
47. I have some letters that I must write.
48. I've got a bottle of wine but I haven't got anything that I could open it with.
49. We are looking for a place where we can have lunch.
50. The lonely child would be happier if he had someone that he could play with.
51. I wish we had a garden that the kids could play in.
52. My files are all over the place. I wish I had a box that I could keep them in.



53. Here are some accounts that you must check.

54. Is there any good place where we can stay tonight?

### ADVANCED:

Ghi chú: *what = the thing(s) that*

*whatever = anything that*

*whoever = any person that*

*those who = the persons/people who*

55. The people who want to apply need to fill in a form. (2 ways) *wanting / those who*
56. English belongs to the people who use it. (2 ways) *using / those who*
57. All the people who do not need to buy tickets please go straight in. (2 ways) *doing*
58. I didn't understand the things that he was saying. (2 ways) *what those who*
59. Is this the thing that you want? (2 ways) *what*
60. We sometimes fear the thing that we don't understand. (2 ways) *what*
61. Yes, I know exactly the thing that he was thinking of. (2 ways) *what*
62. The thing that we need now is actions, not words. (2 ways) *what*
63. He always says anything that comes into his mind. (2 ways) *whatever*
64. If you take the big box, I take anything that is left. (2 ways) *whatever*
65. Anything that she did made them happy. (2 ways) *whatever*
66. I'll always love you anything that you do. (2 ways) *whatever*
67. Anyone who leaves last should turn off the lights. (2 ways) *whoever*
68. Anyone who understands this book is cleverer than I am. (2 ways) *whoever*
69. The prize will go to anyone who submits the best design. (2 ways) *whoever*
70. The new store will give a prize to anyone who comes in between 6:00 and 6:30. (2 ways) *whoever*
71. We will work with whoever they send. (2 ways) *any person that / anyone*
72. Anyone who said those things is mistaken. (2 ways) *whoever*

### B) Find the reduced relative clauses and expand them into the full relative clauses

- A person serving in a shop is called a shop assistant. *who serves*
- Our solar system is in a galaxy called the Milky Way. *which is called*
- The person you are looking for no longer works here. *who you are*
- He was the first man to leave the burning building. *who leaves*
- I have some homework to do tonight. *which do*
- People living in glass houses shouldn't throw stones. *who lives*
- Be sure to follow the instructions given at the top of the page. *which is given*
- What you mustn't miss at this conference is Professor White's lecture. *the things that*
- They seem to give the children whatever they want. *anything that they want*
- Whoever (Whosoever) understands this book is cleverer than I am. *any person that*
- He wasn't the only reporter to question the official line. *who question*
- The people I work with are very friendly. *who*
- There are six reports to be typed today. *which are*
- I was awakened by the sound of a laughter coming from the dark. *who come*
- She is the only woman to be appointed (bổ nhiệm) to the board. *who is*
- I was the only one to realize him. *whom*



17. Where can I catch the bus going downtown?
18. This is the first man ~~who was~~ arrested by police yesterday.
19. People living in large cities have many resources.
20. This is a rare opportunity you should take advantage of to get a better job.
21. Whoever treats me well is my friend.
22. The girl wearing a red dress attracted everybody's attention at the party.
23. The museum exhibited a bird cage made of solid gold.
24. He makes friends easily with whoever he meets.
25. The elephant rescued by the volunteers can be released back into the wild.
26. His eel soup is the best soup I have ever eaten.
27. Whatever she writes is brilliant.
28. This is the kind of language used by deaf and dumb people.
29. Whatever you say may be used in evidence against you.
30. **"The best place to cry is on a mother's arms."** (*Nơi tốt nhất để ngã vào mà khóc là vòng tay mẹ hiền*) — Jodi Picoult
31. Some metals attracted to magnets (nam châm) are iron and nickel.
32. The boy knocked off his bicycle broke his leg.
33. If you have any question, ask the girl standing at the desk. She'll help you.
34. This is the most interesting film I've ever seen.
35. The words underlined in red have errors.
36. The animals found here can be dangerous.
37. The new shop is advertised as a place to find anything that you want to buy.
38. Whoever knows the answer to that question is a genius (thiên tài).
39. Only those who are interested in anthropology like this book.
40. **"Culture is what remains when one has forgotten everything."** (*Văn hóa là những gì còn lại sau khi đã quên hết tất cả*) — Edouard Herriot
41. I need a book to read for the journey.
42. A 15-year-old girl is believed to have been killed in a suicide pact (việc cùng tự tử) with a man she met on Facebook.
43. George is the man chosen to represent the committee at the convention.
44. Have you got something to listen to in the car?
45. All of the money accepted has already been released.
46. **"Don't judge each day by the harvest you reap but by the seeds you plant."** (*Đừng đánh giá mỗi ngày qua đi dựa vào những gì gặt hái được, nhưng dựa vào những hạt mầm mà ta gieo rắc được*) — Robert L. Stevenson
47. The course is for whoever is interested in learning about computers.
48. No one can give what he doesn't have.
49. Marie Curie was the first woman in France to receive a doctorate degree.
50. The envelope lying on the table has no stamp on it.
51. Whoever wanting to come is welcome.
52. The boy bringing the milk every morning has been ill.
53. The vegetables sold in this shop are grown without chemicals.
54. Oil extracted from sunflower seeds is important for use in cooking.



**"It is only the ignorant who despise education"** Chỉ những kẻ dốt nát mới khinh thường học vấn. — *Publilius Syrus*

**"A teacher is one who makes himself progressively unnecessary"**  
Thầy cô giáo là người tự làm cho mình ngày càng trở nên không cần thiết nữa (ý nói ngày càng giúp học trò biết tự rèn luyện) — *Harold Case*

**"Anyone who stops learning is old, whether at twenty or eighty. Anyone who keeps learning stays young"** Ai ngưng học hỏi thì dù hai mươi tuổi hay tám mươi tuổi cũng là người già. Ai luôn học hỏi thì trẻ mãi không già. — *Henry Ford*

# Bài 18

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

	<i>If clause</i>	<i>Main clause</i>
<b>ĐKTL</b> (Loại I)	<b>PRESENT</b> - to be: <b>am, is, are</b> (not) - động từ thường: +XD: <b>V<sub>(1)</sub> [s]</b> +PD: <b>do not + V<sub>(1)</sub></b> <b>does not + V<sub>(1)</sub></b>	<b>FUTURE</b> <b>will (not) + V<sub>(1)</sub></b> - to be: <b>will be</b> - đôi khi dùng <b>can / may / must + V<sub>(1)</sub></b>
<b>ĐKHT</b> (Loại II)	<b>S. PAST</b> - to be: <b>were</b> (not) - động từ thường: + XD: <b>V<sub>(2)</sub> /-ed</b> + PD : <b>did not + V<sub>(1)</sub></b>	<b>WOULD (not) + V<sub>(1)</sub></b> - to be: <b>would be</b> - đôi khi dùng <b>could</b>
<b>ĐKQK</b> (Loại III)	<b>PAST PERFECT</b> - động từ thường: <b>had (not) + V<sub>(3)</sub></b> -to be: <b>had (not) + been</b>	<b>WOULD (not) HAVE + V<sub>(3)</sub></b> - động từ thường: <b>would (not) have + V<sub>(3)</sub></b> - to be: <b>would (not) have been</b>

3 dạng bài tập:

1. CHIA ĐỘNG TỪ Ở MỘT MỆNH ĐỀ

- Đối chiếu bảng dùng thì trên đây
- Câu Question: chỉ có đảo ngữ ở Main Clause
- Câu Request: thường ở loại I (ĐKTL)
- Lưu ý: 'd + V<sub>(1)</sub> = WOULD  
'd + V<sub>(3)</sub> = HAD



## 2. CHIA ĐỘNG TỪ Ở CẢ HAI MỆNH ĐỀ:

- Dựa vào các từ/ nhóm từ chỉ thời gian
  - + tomorrow, next week, someday,...
  - + now, today, this week,...
  - + yesterday, last month, ago,...
- Câu mơ mộng viễn vông, hoặc trái lẽ tự nhiên: loại II
- Định luật khoa học, thói quen: có thể dùng thì PRESENT ở cả hai mệnh đề.

## 3. TỰ VIẾT CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN THEO TÌNH HUỐNG CHO SẴN:

- Lấy mệnh đề nguyên nhân làm **If Clause** (nằm sau **because**, trước **so / this is why**)

- “thì” nào “loại” đó:

Ex. He **is** busy and he **doesn't** go with us. If .....

(thì hiện tại)

loại hiện tại (loại II)

Đáp án: If he **were** not busy he **would** go with us.

- Xác định  $\longleftrightarrow$  phủ định
- Bỏ **and, because, so, this is why**



Ex 1: She **didn't** come because she was angry with us.  
Adj.

SAI: ~~If she had not angried with us...~~

ĐÚNG: If she had not been angry with us....

Ex 2: I came late and I was punished  
(passive)

SAI: ~~If I hadn't come late I would not have punished.~~

ĐÚNG: If..... I would not have been punished

# HAVE TO

She has to work. so she can't go with us.

SAI: ~~If she hadn't to work...~~

ĐÚNG: If she didn't have to work...

1. If I (have) money I'd buy that elephant.
2. If Nam (not study) hard he would fail the exam.
3. It's too cold, we can't go swimming. - If .....
4. She didn't go to the concert because she was ill. - If .....
5. Please remind me if I (forget) it.
6. I (say) "Happy New Year" if today (be) New Year's Day.
7. If there (not be) the sun, we (die).
8. The wall isn't painted, so it looks dirty. - If .....
9. The wall wasn't painted, so it looked dirty. - If .....
10. If I (have) money I would have bought that elephant.
11. Where (we, go) if it (be) fine tomorrow?



12. If she (come), tell her to wait for me.
13. She didn't answer his letter because she was angry with him. - If .....
14. If they (not hurry) they'd be late.
15. He wasn't given that job because he didn't know informatics. - If .....
16. If I (see) him when he came in I (tell) him to wait for you.
17. The crop would not have been so bad if there (be) enough rain.
18. If I (know) his telephone number I'd give it to you.
19. What (you, do) if you were me?
20. What (you, do) if you (be) asked that question in our meeting last week?
21. They'd be angry if you (not visit) them.
22. He's fat because he doesn't jog regularly. - If .....
23. If I (know) that you were ill last week, I (go) to see you.
24. People didn't understand him because he spoke too fast. - If .....
25. Ice (turn) to water if you heat it.
26. Mary gave me this ring. She would be terribly sad if I (lose) it.
27. Ask your mother if you (not believe) what I say.
28. But for the fog, we (reach) our destination ages ago.
29. Because they didn't speak English to her, her English didn't improve. - If ....
30. We came by bus because there were no taxis. - If .....
31. If you (throw) a ball up into the air, it (fall) back down.
32. Someday if your mother (ask) about that girl, what (you, say)?
33. Dick didn't do his exercise well and he wasn't given good marks. - If .....
34. Unless I have a quiet room, I (not be able) to do any work.
35. The bridge was too weak. We had to take another road. - If .....
36. If he asked you, (you, accept)?
37. I had no map, that's why I got lost. If I (have) a map, I (be) all right.
38. It's raining, so we stay home. - If .....
39. If she (not invite), I won't come.
40. She's fat. That's why she can't get through the bathroom window. - If .....
41. Because she has to attend a party, she can't continue to watch TV. - If .....
42. If I (win) a scholarship, I'd go abroad to study.
43. She was lazy. She didn't make better in English. - If .....
44. If you (boil) water, it (disappear) into the atmosphere as vapour.
45. Because John never eats breakfast, he always overeats at lunch. - If .....
46. What we (use) to look at ourselves when we comb our hair in the morning if we (not, have) mirrors?
47. Jack was late for his own wedding because his watch was ten minutes slow.
48. I (mail) this letter right now if I (have) an envelope and a stamp.
49. If there (be) no oxygen on the earth, life as we know it (not, exist) at all.
50. Most people know that oil floats on water. If you pour oil on water, it (float).
51. I'll lend you that money if I (not, have to) use it.
52. If I (be) you, I (not, say) "no" to it.
53. If Betty (come), tell her to wait for me.



54. If you (need) more money, go to the bank before 6 o'clock.
55. I'd have received better grade if (have) a dictionary to check my spelling.
56. Today isn't Saturday, so we can't go to the beach. - If .....
57. Choose a cellphone ringtone that will not embarrass you if it (ring) in front of other people.
58. If I (know) that you were coming, I (meet) you at the airport.
59. She had a headache and couldn't come with us. - If .....
60. If I (be) King Solomon, you (be) the Queen of Sheba.
61. They were so upset because they didn't know the truth. - If .....
62. You didn't close the window. The seat got wet. - If .....
63. Water runs downhill because of the gravity. - If .....

## ADVANCED

### 1. Câu điều kiện loại I biến cách:

*If you should need my help, I will come.*

*Should you need my help, I will come.*

### 2. Câu điều kiện loại II biến cách:

*If you were to buy a car, it would cost you a lot of money.*

*(= If you bought)*

### 3. otherwise / or else / or ("nếu không như thế")

+ Điều kiện loại II: *I am busy now; otherwise I would go with you.*

+ Điều kiện loại III: *She fell ill; otherwise she would have joined us.*  
**but**

+ Điều kiện loại II: *I would go with you, but I am busy now.*

+ Điều kiện loại III: *She would have joined us, but she fell ill.*

### 4. without / but for / if it were not for / if it had not been for ("nếu không có")

+ Điều kiện loại II: *If it were not for the heavy traffic, I wouldn't leave so early. / Without the heavy traffic...*

*Were it not for the heavy traffic, I wouldn't leave so early.*

+ Điều kiện loại III: *If it had not been for the rain, we wouldn't have been late. / Without the rain...*

*Had it not been for the rain, we wouldn't have been late.*

### 5. Câu điều kiện hỗn hợp loại III (IF CLAUSE) và loại II (MAIN CLAUSE):

*If I had taken his advice last year, I would be rich now.*

(loại III)

(loại II)

### 6. in case ("phòng trường hợp" / "phòng khi")

*The referee wears two watches in case one of them stops.*

### 7. as long as / so long as / provided (that) / providing (that)

("miễn là", "chỉ cần")

*You can take my car as long as you drive carefully.*

*You can leave early provided (that) you finish your work.*



8. **suppose (that), supposing that** ("giả sử")*Suppose (that) someone told you I am a spy, what would you say?*9. **unless** (xem Bài 6 trang 33)**PRACTICE**

1. I would have visited you, but I didn't know that you were at home. - If .....
2. It wouldn't have been a good meeting without Rosa. - If .....
3. I couldn't have finished the work without your effective help. - If .....
4. I stepped on the brake. Otherwise. I would have hit the child on the bicycle.  
- If .....
5. Write down the number onto your notebook or you'll forget it. - If .....
6. I would go back to the office and get your briefcase for you. However, the  
building is locked. - If .....
7. You did not feed the dog, so the dog is hungry now. - If .....
8. We must tear it up, or else they'll find out our secret. - If .....
9. Do as you are told or you'll be punished! - If .....
10. Come early, or else you won't find a seat. - If .....
11. I would go swimming, but I have a lot of work to do. - If .....
12. They didn't hard when they were at high school, and they can't find a job  
now. - If .....
13. If he hadn't taken a taxi, he would have been late for work.  
- He ....., otherwise .....
14. The only thing that prevented the passing of the bill was the death of the  
Prime Minister. - Had it not .....
15. The only thing that prevents me from leaving the city is my studies.  
- Were it .....
16. Thanks for your directions to the house. We wouldn't have found it  
otherwise. - If you .....
17. The evening cooking class prevented Laura from continuing to watch TV.  
- Had it not .....
18. It was overeating that caused his death. - If .....
19. If our teacher hadn't helped us instantly, we would have been in serious  
trouble. - But for .....
20. I would not have punished him if he had not been lazy. - Because .....
21. The gate is closed to stop children running into the road. - If the gate .....
22. The procession can go on because the weather doesn't change.  
- If the weather were .....
23. The only reason the party was a success was that a famous film star attended.  
- Had it .....
24. If you want to save your eyesight, you must operate immediately.  
- Only by .....
25. I found it a very readable book. This is why I was able to get through it so  
quickly. - If it .....



26. We must eat to live. - We must eat or .....  
27. I don't write to her because I don't know her address.  
- I ..... but I.....  
28. Because the traffic was heavy, we could not drive faster.  
- But for .....  
- If it .....  
- Had it .....  
29. We were back before midnight, and we weren't locked out.  
- .....otherwise .....  
30. They would have been successful if they had taken my advice.  
- They would have been successful but they .....

## Bài 19

# AS IF / AS THOUGH

---

### 1. as if / as though + past subjunctive

Cấu trúc này nói đến sự kiện không có thật (unreality), khó có thể xảy ra (improbability) hoặc còn hồ nghi (doubt) trong hiện tại.

*He behaves as if (as though) he owned the place.*

Ông ta xử sự **như thể** là chủ nhân nơi này. Nhưng, trong thực tế:

- ông ta không phải là chủ nhân nơi này;
- hoặc ông ta khó có thể là chủ nhân nơi này;
- hoặc chúng ta không biết ông ta có phải là chủ nhân nơi này hay không.

*He orders me about as if (as though) I were his son.*

Ông ta ra lệnh cho tôi như thể tôi là con của ông ta. Nhưng trong thực tế tôi không phải là con của ông ta.

Động từ chính có thể ở thì quá khứ:

*He orders / ordered me about as if (as though) I were his son.*

### 2. as if / as though + past perfect

Thì Past Perfect được dùng khi sự kiện lùi về quá khứ.

*He talks about Rome as if (as though) he had been there himself.*

Ông ta nói về Rôma **như thể** đã từng ở đó rồi. Nhưng trong thực tế:

- ông ta chưa từng ở Rôma bao giờ;
- hoặc rất có thể ông ta chưa từng ở Rôma bao giờ;
- hoặc chúng ta không biết ông đã từng hay chưa từng ở Rôma.

Động từ chính có thể ở thì quá khứ:

*He looks/looked as if (as though) he hadn't had a decent meal for a month.*

(Ông ta có vẻ như thể không được ăn bữa nào đàng hoàng suốt cả tháng nay).

(Cf. *A Practical English Grammar* 292)



PRACTICE

- 1. He walks as if he (have) a wooden leg.
- 2. He talks as if he (do) all the work himself, but in fact I did most of it.
- 3. The cheese looks as if rats (nibble) it.
- 4. He always talks as though he (address) a public meeting.
- 5. When I reached the fourth floor, I was winded. I felt as if I (climb) Mt. Everest instead of just three flights of stairs.
- 6. Barbara looked at me as though she (never, meet) me before.
- 7. He treats us as if we (be) all idiots.
- 8. What's the matter? You look as if you (see) a ghost.
- 9. She talked to me as if I (be) a child.
- 10. You talk as though it (be) a small thing to leave your country for ever.
- 11. Hương spoke English as if she (be) a native speaker.
- 12. He looks as though he never (get) a square meal, but in fact his wife feeds him very well.
- 13. This hole in my shirt looks as if it (be) made by a bullet.
- 14. I feel terrible. I feel as if I (be) run over by a ten-ton truck.
- 15. I was so happy that I felt as if I (have) wings and (can) fly.

Bài 20  
REPORTED SPEECH  
(INDIRECT SPEECH)

LOẠI		VERB MỞ ĐẦU	THÊM	BỎ	CÁU TRÚC	BIẾN ĐỔI KHÁC
STATEMENT		A told B A said (to B)	[that]			- Đổi thì  - Đổi nhân vật  - Đổi chi tiết
REQUEST	“hãy”	A asked B (told)	to	please		
	“đừng”		not to	please don't		
QUESTION	YES-NO Question	A asked B	if hoặc whether		Bỏ đạo ngữ	
	WH- Question					



### **ĐÔI THÌ (TENSES)**

-Present	-	S. Past
-Present cont.	-	Past Cont.
-S. Past	-	Past Perfect
-Present Perf.	-	Past Perfect
-will	-	would
-can	-	could
-may	-	might
-must	-	had to / must

+ Câu ĐK loại II

+ Câu ĐK loại III

+ might, would, used to

+ Khi Verb mở đầu là

SAY, SAYS

KHÔNG  
ĐÔI  
THÌ

### **ĐÔI NHÂN VẬT**

- Ngôi thứ nhất = người nói  
(I, me, my, mine, myself, we, us, our, ourselves)
- Ngôi thứ hai = người nghe  
(you, you, your, yours, yourself, yourselves)
- Ngôi thứ ba: Không đổi  
(he, she, it, they...)

### **ĐÔI CHI TIẾT**

- <u>this</u>	-	that
- <u>these</u>	-	those
- <u>here</u>	-	there
- <u>now</u>	-	then
- <u>ago</u>	-	before
- <u>thus</u>	-	so
- <u>today</u>	-	that day
- <u>tomorrow</u>	-	the next day / the following day

- <u>yesterday</u>	-	the day before
-the day after - tomorrow	-	in two day's time
-the day before - yesterday	-	two days before

- <u>tonight</u>	-	that night
- <u>last night</u>	-	the night before
- <u>last week/year...</u>	-	the previous week...
- <u>next week/year</u>	-	the following week...
-a week/year ago-	-	a week before/ the previous week

(Cần ghi nhớ những từ / nhóm từ  
được gạch dưới)

## **LỚP 10**

1. Mary said, "I have been here for a few days."
2. The teacher said to his pupils, "Bring your books with you tomorrow."
3. The teacher said to us, "Don't write your lessons in pencil."
4. She said, "Can you speak Russian?"
5. "How long did it take you to read 'War and Peace'?" the teacher said.
6. Mrs. Brown said to her husband, "I'll wait for you here."
7. Mrs. Brown says, "I don't allow smoking in my room."
8. Mr. Pike said to Mary, "I didn't meet your father yesterday."
9. "Please don't come back late tonight," said Mr. Green.
10. The teacher said to us, "Do these exercises by yourselves!"
11. "Do you know her address, John?" I said.
12. "How old are you?" the policeman said.
13. "I must tell you about everything I found in this room," he said.
14. The detective said, "Where did you go two weeks ago?"
15. "I'm sick today," said the boy.
16. The little girl said, "I was sick yesterday."



17. She said to her brothers, "I never forget the good time we had last year."
18. The man said, "Daughter, take my golden jug, and fetch me some water from the well."
19. My teacher often said to me, "If you don't work hard, no one can help you."
20. My teacher often says to me, "If you don't work hard, you will fail."
21. "My children, don't put your shoes in my room," said the woman.
22. "My children don't understand German," said the woman.
23. The policeman said, "Are you interested in my job?"
24. The woman said to the policeman, "Are you on duty now?"
25. I said to him, "I think only you can understand and help me."
26. My friend said, "I have read these books."
27. Helen said to me, "Please lend me your dictionary till 5 o'clock tomorrow."
28. My mother always says, "Remember to look at yourself in a mirror before you go out."
29. The man said, "I hope it won't rain tonight."
30. She said, "I am ashamed of myself and for this city."
31. "What's your name?" he said to me.
32. The little boy said, "Mum, how old are you?"
33. Mary said to me, "Your essay is better than mine".
34. He said, "If I catch the plane, I'll be home by five."
35. He said, "If I had a map, I would lend it to you."
36. She said to her son, "If you had driven faster, I wouldn't have been late."
37. "Do you know how to operate this lift, John?" I said.
38. The policeman said, "Mr. Parker, where did you go two days ago?"
39. "It isn't so foggy today as it was yesterday," the old farmer said.
40. "I'll come with you as soon as I am ready," she said to her friends.
41. "Can I bring my dog into the compartment with me?" she asked.
42. She said to me, "What would you do if you were a king?"
43. "Don't wait for me if I'm late," Jack said to his wife.
44. "Why do you think it may be dangerous?" he asked.
45. "Read the instructions before you turn on the machine," he said to us.
46. "Shut the door but don't lock it," he said to me.
47. I said, "Mrs. White, do you like the presents from your children?"
48. "Will you go to Cairo on your holiday next month?" he said to us.
49. "Send me a postcard when you arrive in Paris, my son," she said.
50. "How long does it take you to walk to school, Mary?" the teacher said.
51. The driver said to the kids, "Are you interested in my job?"
52. "Take the children to school for me please?" she said to her husband.
53. "I bought a new motorbike for myself yesterday," he said.
54. "Please get in touch with your wife today, Mr. Pike," I said.
55. The zookeeper said to the children, "Don't feed the animals."
56. Ann asked me, "Did you yourself write this story?"



Subject Pronouns	Object Pronouns	Possessive Adjectives	Possessive Pronouns	Reflexive Pronouns
I	me	my	mine	myself
you	you	your	yours	yourself
he	him	his	his	himself
she	her	her	hers	herself
it	it	its	its	itself
we	us	our	ours	ourselves
you	you	your	yours	yourselves
they	them	their	theirs	themselves

Ex. I am not a new guy here. Perhaps you know me. This is my house.  
The house is mine. I am very proud of it because I built it myself.

LỚP 11, 12

REPORTING VERBS

<b>accuse</b> sb. of doing sth.	<b>instruct</b> sb. to do sth.
<b>admit</b> doing sth.	<b>invite</b> sb. to do sth.
<b>admit</b> that	<b>object</b> to sth./doing sth.
<b>advise</b> sb. to do sth.	<b>offer</b> to do sth. (for sb.)
<b>advise</b> sb. against doing sth.	<b>order</b> sb. to do sth.
sb. not to do sth.	<b>persuade</b> sb. to do sth.
<b>agree</b> to do sth.	<b>promise</b> to do sth.
<b>apologize</b> (to sb.) for doing sth.	<b>propose</b> doing sth.
<b>ask</b> sb. to do sth.	<b>propose</b> that
<b>assure</b> that / <b>be sure</b> that	<b>recommend</b> doing sth.
<b>beg</b> sb. to do sth.	<b>recommend</b> that
<b>blame</b> sb. for doing sth.	<b>refuse</b> to do sth.
<b>complain</b> (about / that)	<b>regret</b> (not) doing sth.
<b>complain</b> to sb. about sth.	<b>remind</b> sb. to do sth.
<b>confess</b> to doing something	<b>suggest</b> doing sth.
<b>confess</b> that	<b>suggest</b> that
<b>congratulate</b> sb. on doing sth.	<b>tell</b> sb. to do sth.
<b>criticize</b> sb. for doing sth.	<b>thank</b> (sb.) for doing sth.
<b>demand</b> sb. to do sth.	<b>threaten</b> to do sth.
<b>deny</b> doing sth.	<b>threatened</b> that
<b>deny</b> that	<b>urge</b> sb. to do sth.
<b>encourage</b> sb. to do sth.	<b>want</b> to know (what / when / if...)
<b>forbid</b> sb. to do sth.	<b>warn</b> sb. against doing sth.
<b>insist</b> on doing sth	<b>warn</b> sb. not to do sth.
<b>insist</b> that	<b>wonder</b> (what / when / if...)



**Some examples from *A Practical English Grammar*:**

1. "Could you please show me where the shops are?" he said.  
→ *He asked me to show him where the shops were.*
2. "Would you mind getting out of the car?" said the driver.  
→ *The driver asked me to get out of the car.*
3. "Don't swim out too far, boys", I said.  
→ *I warned the boys not to swim out too far.*
4. "What about flying?" he said.  
→ *He suggested flying.*
5. He said, "Let's go."  
→ *He suggested going*  
→ *He suggested that they should go.*
6. "Shall we have dinner somewhere after the theatre?" said Peter.  
→ *Peter suggested having have dinner somewhere after the theatre.*
7. "Let's buy some yeast and make our own bread," said Mary.  
→ *Mary suggested buying some yeast and making their own bread.*
8. "Let's stay here till the storm has passed," I said.  
→ *I suggested staying till the storm had passed.*  
→ *I suggested that we should stay there till the storm had passed.*
9. "Let's not tell anyone," said Tom, "till we are quite certain that the report is true."  
→ *Tom suggested not telling anyone till they were quite certain that the report was true.*  
→ *Tom suggested that they shouldn't tell anyone till they were quite certain that the report was true.*
10. "Shall I lend you some money?" he said to me.  
→ *He offered to lend me some money.*
11. "Shall I go and get a candle?" said Ann when the light went out suddenly.  
→ *Ann offered to get a candle.*
12. "Would you like a cigarette, Jack?" said Peter.  
→ *Peter offered Jack a cigarette.*
13. "Please, please don't do anything dangerous," said his wife.  
→ *His wife begged him not to do anything dangerous.*
14. "You'd better sweep up that broken glass," he said.  
→ *He advised me to sweep up that broken glass.*
15. "Why don't you open a new account?" he said.  
→ *He advised me to open a new account.*
16. "I'd buy the big tin if I were you," said the grocer.  
→ *The grocer advised me to buy the big tin.*
17. "Would you like to have lunch with me today, Mary?" said Tom.  
→ *Tom invited Mary to lunch (with him) that day.*
18. "Do go to a dentist, Tom, before your toothache gets any worse," I said.  
→ *I urged Tom to go to a dentist before his toothache got any worse.*



**More examples:**

19. "Watch out! The bull looks dangerous," they said.  
→ *They warned us against the dangerous bull.*
20. She said to us, "Don't go alone in the dark."  
→ *She warned us against going alone in the dark.*
21. "Be careful of pickpockets," the policeman said to us.  
→ *The policeman warned us to be careful of pickpockets.*
22. What a pity I didn't see the ceremony," he said.  
→ *He regretted not seeing the ceremony.*
23. "Look, he is a thief!" the greengrocer said.  
→ *The greengrocer accused him of being a thief.*
24. "It was your fault that I couldn't arrive on time," the girl said to her friend.  
→ *The girl blamed her friend for her arriving late.*
25. "I will help you, Tom, for sure," the teacher said.  
→ *The teacher promised to help Tom.*
26. "Stay with us until tomorrow, OK?" the uncle said.  
→ *The uncle insisted on our staying with them for the night.*
27. "It was nice of you to visit me. Thank you," Mary said to me.  
→ *Mary thanked me for visiting her.*
28. "You should take part in the competition," said the teacher to us.  
→ *The teacher encouraged us to take part in the competition.*
29. "I hear you passed your exams. Congratulations!" Peter said to us.  
→ *Peter congratulated us on passing our exams.*
30. "We must be given every detail of the contest," they insisted.  
→ *They insisted on being given every detail of the contest.*
31. "To tell the truth, I still haven't read these books," she said.  
→ *She admitted not having read those books yet.*  
→ *She admitted that she still hadn't read those books.*
32. "Yeah. I broke that window," he said.  
→ *He admitted that he had broken the window.*
33. "Me? No, I didn't take the credit card," she said.  
→ *She denied taking the credit card.*  
→ *She denied (that) she had taken the credit card.*
34. "I'm sorry I didn't write to you" Jack said.  
→ *Jack apologized for not writing to me.*
35. He said to me, "It was your fault. You ignored the notice."  
→ *He blamed me for ignoring the notice.*
36. Doctor said to Mary, "Remember to have your medicine on time."  
→ *The doctor reminded Mary to have her medicine on time.*
37. "Be sure to lock the door before you leave," she said to her son.  
→ *She reminded her son to lock the door before he left.*
38. "You'd better buy the black jeans" she said.  
→ *She suggested that I (should) buy the black jeans.*



39. "You must do the washing up before you go out," she insisted.  
→ *She insisted that I (should) do the washing up before I went out.*
40. "Give me the keys to the safe or I'll shoot you!" he shouted.  
→ *He threatened to shoot me if I didn't give him the keys to the safe.*  
→ *He threatened that he would shoot me if I didn't give him the keys to the safe.*
41. "No, I won't answer any questions about my private life," she said.  
→ *She refused to answer questions concerning his private life.*

**The tense remains unchanged in conditional sentences types II and III:**

42. "If I catch the plane I'll be home by five," he said. (type I)  
→ *He said that if he caught the plane he would be home by five.*
43. "If I had a permit I could get a job," he said. (type II)  
→ *He said that if he had a permit he could get a job.*
44. "If she had loved Tom," he said, "she wouldn't have left him." (type III)  
→ *He said that if she had loved Tom she wouldn't have left him.*

## PRACTICE

**10 câu trong Sách Giáo Khoa lớp 11, trang 74-75:**

1. *Linda*: Let me pay for the meal.  
*Tom*: Certainly not! I'll pay.  
→ *Tom insisted on* .....
2. *Woman*: Hey! You've broken the window of my house!  
*Boy*: Oh ... no, I've just arrived here. I don't know anything about it.  
→ *The boy denied* .....
3. *Detective*: You have stolen Mrs. Brown's car!  
*The thief*: Yes...! But...  
→ *The thief admitted* .....
4. *Mary*: What shall we do on Saturday?  
*Ann*: What about having a party?  
→ *Ann suggested* .....
5. "It was nice of you to help me. Thank you very much," Tom said to her.  
→ *Tom thanked* .....
6. "I hear you passed your exams. Congratulations!" John said to us.  
→ *John congratulated* .....
7. "I'm sorry I didn't phone you earlier," Mary said.  
→ *Mary apologised* .....
8. "You didn't pay attention to what I said," the teacher said to the boy.  
→ *The teacher accused* .....
9. "Don't stay at the hotel near the airport," I said to Ann.  
→ *I warned* .....
10. *Peter*: "I'm sorry I'm late."  
→ *Peter apologised* .....



- 
- 11. "Does she love me and know that I love her?" Tom asked himself. (**wonder**)
- 12. "It was Peter who stole it!" said Martine. (**accuse**)
- 13. "It was your fault. You ignored the notice," he said. (**blame**)
- 14. "Would it be possible to borrow your dictionary, please?" said Jane. (**ask**)
- 15. "Would you like to come over and watch a movie?" she said. (**invite**)
- 16. "You really must let me cook dinner," said Anne. (**insist**)
- 17. "You caused this mess," he said to his servants.
- 18. "You've caused a lot of pain to my family," she told him. (**accuse**)
- 19. "Don't try this at home," the stuntman told the audience. (**warn**)
- 20. "You gave me an excellent story to tell my grandkids. Thank you," the old lady said. (**thank**)
- 21. "Children, it is always good to obey your parents," the pastor said. (**advise**)
- 22. "It's very hot in here. Would you mind opening the window?" he said. (**ask**)
- 23. "Are you looking for something special, Mr. Jones?" the shop assistant said. (**ask**)
- 24. The accused (bị cáo) said to the judge (thẩm phán), "Please, please let me meet my family before I die." (**beg**)
- 25. "It was you who ate my chocolate, Rose, wasn't it?" Bill said (**accuse**)
- 26. "OK, it was me. I ate your chocolate," Rose said to him. (**admit**)
- 27. "I would be grateful if you could send me further details of the job," he said to me. (**ask**)
- 28. "Well, if I were you I'd start saving for my retirement," he said. (**advise**)
- 29. "Well done! I knew you'd pass your driving test this time," she said. (**congratulate**)
- 30. "It most certainly wasn't me that left the front door open," Mike said. (**deny**)
- 31. "You'd better not leave your car unlocked," the police officer said to the lady. (**advise**)
- 32. "The bag must be heavy, Mrs. White. Shall I take it for you?" the young man said. (**offer**)
- 33. "Don't make so much noise in class," I said to the students. (**tell**)
- 34. "You should know it's worth taking the exam again," she said to some pupils. (**encourage**)
- 35. "Remember you have to go to the bank. You forgot yesterday," said the woman to her husband. (**remind**)
- 36. "What a pity I didn't see the ceremony," he said. (**regret**)
- 37. "Let's not come there by bus," said Susan. (**object**)
- 38. "I know I am wrong," he said. (**admit**)
- 39. "I am not used to living by myself in a big city," she said. (**say**)
- 40. "If my children were older, I would retire," he said. (**say**)
- 41. "If I had heard the story, I would have acted differently," he said. (**say**)
- 42. "If it doesn't rain, we'll set out at six o'clock sharp," he said. (**say**)
- 43. "I won't leave before I see the manager of this company," he said. (**insist**)



44. "I'll kill the boy if you refuse to hand over the money," the kidnapper said.  
(threaten)
45. "I must tell you something, Jane. I love you with all my heart," he said.  
(confess) ♥♥
- 
46. My father said, "Remember to insure your luggage."
47. "Yes, I stole the money," he said.
48. "Why don't we take a holiday in the mountains?" he said.
49. She said, "Why don't you get a mechanic to look at the car?"
50. "If you say another word I will punish you," she said to her son.
51. "I should say nothing about it if I were you," said my brother.
52. The kidnappers said to us, "If you don't pay the ransom, we'll kill the boy."
53. Rita said, "Tom, don't play with fire because you may get hurt."
54. I said, "Betty, why don't you have your hair cut at the new beauty parlor?"
55. "Don't repair the computer yourself," she warned him.
56. "My daughter was at home for the whole morning", the woman explained.
57. "I could help you with that math problem if you want," he said.
58. "Tell me, what makes you spend too much money on silly things?" the man said to his daughter.
59. "You'd better not swim too far from the shore," the lifeguard said to us.
60. "How far is Valencia from here?" Tony asked me.
61. "Be careful of strangers and don't go out at night," she said to the little boy.
62. He said, "Let's stop now and finish it later."
63. "Could you pass me the bread, please?" she said to me.
64. "Remember to check the tyres (lốp xe) before you leave," he said to us.
65. My sister said, "I often make my clothes by myself."
66. "Are you interested in my poems?" she kept asking her pupils.
67. "If I had the tools I could mend it," he said.
68. "If I were you, I'd stop taking tranquillizers," my doctor said.
69. "Try again," said Ann's friends encouragingly.
70. "I'm sorry I didn't tell you the truth, Mom." Peter said.
71. "We must help ourselves out of this situation," he said to his friends.
72. "Don't shelter under a tree in a thunderstorm because the tree may be struck by lightning," the instructor said.
73. "Yes, I was unfaithful to my husband," Diana said to the journalist.
74. "Would you mind taking off your hat?" I said to the woman in front of me.
75. "Would you like to come to my birthday party next week?" she said.
76. "Congratulations. You won the game," his friends said to him.
77. "It was nice of you to pick me up at the station yesterday," she said.
78. "Shall I help you with the washing-up?" he said to her.
79. "Don't swim out too far, boys," said the coach.
80. "Not me. I didn't make fun of your daughter" the boy said to me.
81. "Shall I bring you some tea, Mary?" he said.



- 82. "Don't forget to go to the market before you go home this afternoon," my mother said.
- 83. "Don't move or I'll kill you," one of the robbers shouted.
- 84. "I hear you made great progress. Congratulations! Mary" he said.
- 85. "I think you should stop eating so many sweets," Mary's brother said to her.
- 86. "Be sure to wear very warm clothes when you go outside," Mum said to us.
- 87. "You'd better not yell at your employees," Sarah said to Ben.
- 88. "It was kind of you to give me such good advice. Thanks, Mike" said Mary.
- 89. "You robbed the bank!" said the judge to the criminal.
- 90. "Have you informed the police yet?" Mary said to me.
- 91. "If I were you, I wouldn't accept this boring job," he said to his sister.
- 92. "If you saw my father, you'd recognize him at once," she said to me.

# Bài 21

## COMPARISON

BẰNG	KÉM	HƠN	NHẤT
as + Adj. + as Adv. <u>Không bằng:</u> Verb PD+ so/as + Adj.+ as Adv.	less + Adj.+ than Adv.	Adj. -er + than Adv.-er  more +Adj.+ than Adv.	the Adj-est Adv-est  the most Adj. Adv.

Khi so sánh **HƠN** và **NHẤT** cần lưu ý: {  
- Adj/ Adv. ngắn  
- Adj/ Adv. dài  
- Adj/Adv. ngoại lệ

**ADJ / ADV. NGẮN** : thêm -er / -est

- + có một âm tiết (*richer, faster, smaller,...* – phải gấp đôi phụ âm cuối nếu trước nó có một nguyên âm: *hot - hotter*. Không đổi "y" thành "i" nếu trước nó có nguyên âm: *grey - greyer*).
- + có hai âm tiết, tận cùng bằng -ow, -er, -y (*narrower, cleverer, happier* ). Chú trọng nhất những từ hai âm tiết tận cùng bằng -y (*happy, easy, healthy, busy, lazy, mighty, tasty, noisy, early, lucky...*) mà ta tạm gọi là nhóm "happy".

**ADJ / ADV. DÀI** : dùng more / most

- + Ex. *more beautiful, the most intelligent,...*
- + Các Adv. tận cùng bằng -ly dùng **more / most**: *carefully - more carefully* ngoại trừ *early - earlier*)



**ADJ / ADV. NGOẠI LỆ**

good (adj.) }  
well (adv.) } better - best

much }  
many } more - most

bad (adj.) }  
badly (adv.) } worse - worst

little - less - least  
("ít" - không đếm được)

far {  
- farther - farthest (nghĩa đen: "xa hơn")  
- further - furthest (nghĩa bóng: "thêm")

old {  
- older - oldest  
- elder - eldest

(elder, eldest dùng trước danh từ chỉ người trong gia đình: *my elder brother is an artist*. Không dùng với "than": *my brother is older than I am*.)

**CHÚ Ý:**

- She has **less money** than I have. (*money*: danh từ không đếm được)  
(Nàng có ít tiền hơn tôi)  
- She has **fewer books** than I have. (*books*: danh từ đếm được)  
(Nàng có ít sách hơn tôi)
- more + adj/adv: "hơn"      Ex. - He is **more diligent** than I am.  
- more + noun: "nhiều... hơn"      Ex. - He bought **more stamps** than I did.
- He smokes **more than** I do. (*more + than*: "nhiều hơn")  
- I sleep **more than** my brother.
- In this dress, Susan looks **more** beautiful. (không có "than")  
- Well, I feel healthier. (= I feel healthier than I felt yesterday)

**EXERCISES****A. Cho dạng thích hợp của tính từ hoặc trạng từ trong ngoặc:**

- She is (young) than her sister.
- He is the (old) member of the family.
- That is the (old) house in the city.
- Henry is (old) than David.
- I feel (well) today as I did yesterday.
- Can you do (well) than you have been doing?
- Bob is not (studious) as his cousin.
- This problem is the (hard) of all.
- We work (efficiently) than these boys.
- John came (early) than even the chairman.



11. This was the (far) point they reached in their discussion.
12. John does not run (fast) as Bill.
13. John is a (good) swimmer than Bill.
14. He is as (brave) as a lion.
15. Mary studies the (diligently) of all.
16. I'll give you (far) details later.
17. I received (little) money than the others did.
18. This book is (interesting) than that one.
19. I cannot walk any (far).
20. This virtuous woman is as (busy) as a bee.
21. Manchester is (far) from London than Oxford is.
22. We played (badly) than we have ever played before.
23. Is Jim (old) than Tom? - No, he's much (young).
24. This is the (strange) film that I've ever seen.
25. The pen is (mighty) than the sword.
26. Akbar was one of the (great) of kings.
27. Istanbul is one of the (beautiful) places in this world.
28. My house is (big) than yours.
29. This flower is (beautiful) than that one.
30. This is the (interesting) book I have ever read.
31. My dad is the (busy) driver in London.
32. I am (bad) at maths than my best friend.
33. Non-smokers usually live (long) than smokers.
34. My mobile phone is less (expensive) than yours.
35. Which is the (dangerous) animal in the world?
36. I think a holiday by the sea is (good) than a holiday in the mountains.
37. It is strange but often a coke is (expensive) than a beer.
38. The weather this summer is even (bad) than last summer.
39. There are (few) days in February than in any other month.
40. Cancer is (little) dangerous than AIDS.

**B. Dùng các từ cho sẵn để đặt câu so sánh hơn:**

1. London / interesting / Oxford.
2. Mrs. Brown / drive / carefully / her husband.
3. This book / that one / good.
4. My friends / pretty / yours.
5. Mary / Susan / speak / French / well.
6. Time / money / precious.
7. Mrs. Parker / her husband / talk / much.
8. I / can work / comfortably / in the morning / in the afternoon.
9. Her illness / serious / we at first thought.
10. Health and happiness / important / money.
11. We've got / little time / I thought.
12. George / John / play tennis / badly.



13. During last summer / he / visit / many places / his brother.
14. He / talk / much / he do.
15. We walked / slowly / the rest of the people.
16. The Spanish athlete / ran / fast / the other runners.
17. Jim / Peter / threw / the ball / far.
18. We / answered / all the questions / the other students / well.
19. I / speak / English / fluently / now / last year.
20. The weather / last summer / good / this summer.
21. She / smiled / happily / before.
22. Her family / happy / mine.
23. Mrs. Smith / has / few / children / Mrs. Xoài.



**Hướng dẫn:**

- Dùng danh từ/ đại từ ở đầu làm Subject của mệnh đề.
- Chia động từ theo Subject này, thường ở thì Present.
- Dùng cấu trúc so sánh hơn.

**C. Viết lại câu, dùng so sánh hơn:**

1. A cigarette is not so strong as a cigar. → A cigar .....
2. Mary doesn't write so beautifully as these friends.
3. A donkey is less beautiful than a horse.
4. My exercise wasn't so good as yours.
5. It is less dangerous to tease a lion than scorn a woman. → It is .....
6. The violin isn't as low as the cello.
7. John is much less intelligent than Paul. → Paul .....
8. I think apples aren't so tasty as bananas.
9. In this class the girls don't talk so much as the boys.
10. Mrs. Jones doesn't cook so well as her husband. → Mr. Jones .....
11. The sword is not so mighty as the pen.
12. Jenny's new flat isn't as nice as her old one. → Jenny's .....
13. This phone doesn't have as many features as the other one.
14. My ticket doesn't cost as much as yours.
15. I don't live so far from here as he does.
16. Group A didn't start as early as Group B.
17. The heat isn't so harmful as the cold.
18. Our car isn't as economical as Mike's.
19. I don't drive so badly as he does. → He .....
20. He is not so stupid as I thought he was. → He .....

**Hướng dẫn:** Thực hiện ngược lại, lưu ý **adj/adv** ngắn, dài hoặc ngoại lệ.

**Ghi chú:** *John is older than I (am) = John is older than me.*

Nhưng đôi khi hai câu không đồng nghĩa:

- *I know you better than he* (= I know you better than he knows you).
- *I know you better than him* (= I know you better than I know him).



**D. Viết lại câu, dùng so sánh không bằng:**

1. Gold is more precious than silver. → Silver .....
2. This exercise is better than your last one. → Your .....
3. Susan typed better than Mary.
4. John knows more French songs than Paul.
5. Jane does more work than Susan.
6. This house is older than that one.
7. These cars are more expensive than those.
8. Carol plays tennis worse than Paul and Peter.
9. AIDS is worse than cancer and tuberculosis (bệnh lao).
10. Planes can fly higher than birds.
11. My friend's computer is more convenient than yours.
12. A horse runs faster than a dog.
13. She spent more time on making up (trang điểm) than her daughters.
14. As for me, maths lessons are more enjoyable than science lessons.
15. The weather today is better than it was yesterday. → Yesterday .....
16. He speaks more than he acts.
17. I sleep more than my brother.
18. Central Park is better-known than Prospect Park.
19. With a hat she looks younger than with a wig (tóc giả).
20. My perfume (nước hoa) smells sweeter than yours.
21. Housework is more important to her than socializing (việc giao tế xã hội).
22. The garden is smaller than we hoped. → The garden .....
23. He travelled farther than other members of the family. → No other .....

**Hướng dẫn:** Thực hiện ngược lại, động từ phủ định, lưu ý "better", "worse", và "more+ noun"

**E. Chọn từ đúng trong ngoặc:**

1. She is the..... of the two girls (*tall, taller, tallest*)
2. He is the..... of all the students in his class (*tall, taller, tallest*)
3. She is..... person I have ever known. (*delightful, more delightful, the most delightful*)
4. It was..... game of the season. (*exciting, more exciting, the most exciting*)
5. He works ..... his brother. (*harder than, hardest than, the hardest than*)
6. I have ..... courage than my friend does. (*little, less, least*)
7. Why did he do the test so .....? (*worse, worst, badly*)
8. Can you give us ..... comments? (*further, more further, furthest*)
9. Is this book ..... the one I read last week? (*more interesting than, interesting than, most interesting as*)
10. Can you write a ..... composition? The one you wrote last week was not good enough. (*worse, better, well*)
11. He did the test so ..... that he had to take another test the next day. (*bad, badly, worse*)



12. This house is too small. I want to find a ..... one. (*large, larger, largest*)
13. A father is now three times ..... his son. Twelve years ago he was six times ..... his son. Find the present age of each. (*as old as, older than*).

## TRANSFORMATION

1. Hùng is taller than Ba. → Ba .....
2. Wood isn't so heavy as iron. → Iron .....
3. Jane can swim further than I can. (*Mỹ: farther; Anh: further*) → I can't.....
4. Sound travels more slowly than light. → Light travels .....
5. Our garden is not so pretty as theirs. → Their garden .....
6. She is a better swimmer than I am. → I don't .....
7. Bananas are better for your health than apples. → Apples aren't .....
8. In November we can't sail so far as in April. → In April we .....
9. His children don't start so quickly as he does. → He.....
10. His children don't start so early as he does. → He.....
11. A day in prison is longer than a thousand years at large. (*Nhất nhật tại tù, thiên thu tại ngoại*) → A thousand .....
12. Blood is thicker than water. (*Proverb*) (*Một giọt máu đào hơn ao nước lã*)
13. Actions speak louder than words. (*Proverb*)
14. Two heads are better than one. (*Proverb*)
15. A live ass is better than a dead lion. (*Proverb*)

## DOUBLE COMPARISON

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ he drove, the \_\_\_\_\_ we got.  
 A. more fast - more nervous                      B. faster - nervous  
 C. fastest - nervousness                          D. faster - more nervous
2. The earlier she leaves, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. the sooner she will arrive                      B. the soonest she will arrive  
 C. she will soon arrived                          D. she will arrive sooner
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ North we go, the \_\_\_\_\_ we are to meet high temperatures.  
 A. far - less likely                                  B. farther - likely  
 C. farthest - least likely                          D. farther - less likely
4. \_\_\_\_\_ you practice, \_\_\_\_\_ accurately you will be able to type.  
 A. Longer - more                                      B. The longer - the more  
 C. The longer - the much                          D. The longest - the most
5. \_\_\_\_\_, the shorter its lifetime is.  
 A. The more the equipment is                      B. The cheaper the equipment is  
 C. The greater the equipment is                      D. The much the equipment is
6. \_\_\_\_\_ the weather is, \_\_\_\_\_ electricity consumption is.  
 A. the hot - the more                                  B. the hotter - the greater  
 C. the more hot - the more great                      D. the hotter - the more great
7. My daughter's maths homework is getting \_\_\_\_\_ difficult to understand.  
 A. greater              B. the more              C. more and more              D. better and better



8. The harder you work, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. the sooner promoted you get.      B. the more promoted you get.  
 C. the sooner you get promoted.      D. All are incorrect.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ he gets \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. The richer, the more friends he has      B. Richer, more he has friends  
 C. Richer, more friends he has      D. The richer, the more he has friends.
10. It is \_\_\_\_ to find time for everything you want to do.  
 A. hardest and hardest      B. more and more  
 C. less and less      D. harder and harder
11. Their determination accounts for the \_\_\_\_\_ numbers of spectators going to the stadium this season.  
 A. greater and greater      B. more and more  
 C. better and better      D. many and many
12. He eats ice cream, he gets fat.  
 A. The more ice cream does he eat, the more fatter does he get.  
 B. The more ice cream he eats, the more fatter he gets.  
 C. The more ice cream he eats, the fatter he gets.  
 D. The more he eats ice cream, the fatter he gets.
13. The richer she is, the \_\_\_\_\_ she becomes.  
 A. the more selfish      B. the more lazy  
 C. the more lazily      D. the selfisher
14. As the day went on, the weather got \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. worse and worse      B. worst and worst  
 C. badly and badly      D. bad and bad
15. Which sentence is correct?  
 A. More study you do, smarter you will become.  
 B. The more you study, the smarter you will become.  
 C. You study the more, you will become the smarter  
 D. Better you study, smarter you will become.
16. The more you talk about the situation, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. it seems the worse      B. it seems worse  
 C. the worse it seems      D. the worse does it seem
17. Mr. Pike gets old so he often feels tired. This sentence means: \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. When Mr. Pike gets old, he will feel tired.  
 B. Although Mr. Pike gets old, he often feels tired.  
 C. The older Mr. Pike gets, the more often he feels tired.  
 D. Mr. Pike likes to get old so that he often feels tired.
18. \_\_\_\_\_ trees in the area are found having died from the effect of polluted air.  
 A. The more and more      B. More and more  
 C. Much more      D. Less and less
19. \_\_\_\_\_ it is, \_\_\_\_\_ I feel.  
 A. Hotter- more miserable      B. The better hot- the better miserable  
 C. The hotter - the more miserable      D. The more hot- the more miserable



20. I learn a lot but I cannot remember anything.  
 A. I learn more and remember more.  
 B. The less I learn, the more I remember.  
 C. The more I learn, the less I remember.  
 D. I remember not only what I have learnt.
21. Prices are becoming \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. higher and higher                      B. the higher and higher  
 C. more and more high                      D. the higher the higher
22. - "What do you think of his presence here?"  
 - "The longer he stays, I dislike him."  
 A. the most      B. the very more      C. much more      D. the more
23. \_\_\_\_\_ the match was, the more spectators it attracted.  
 A. The most interesting                      B. The best interesting  
 C. The more interesting                      D. The interesting
24. The more careless he is in his work, the more \_\_\_\_\_ he is.  
 A. successful      B. unsuccessful      C. unsuccess      D. success
25. The more running water you use, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. your bill will be higher                      B. will be higher your bill  
 C. the higher your bill will be                      D. the highest your bill will be

## MORE + NOUN

MORE + NOUN { many, fewer (đếm được)  
 much, less (không đếm được)

1. *She knows more songs than I do.*  
 - I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ . (không nhiều ... bằng)  
 - I know \_\_\_\_\_ . (ít ... hơn)
2. *He drank more beer than I did.*  
 - I didn't drink \_\_\_\_\_ . (không ... nhiều bằng)  
 - I drank \_\_\_\_\_ . (ít ... hơn)
3. *He has more work at home than I do.*  
 - I don't have .....  
 - I have .....
4. *They found more mushrooms (nấm) than we did.*.....  
 - We didn't find.....  
 - We found.....
5. *She talks in class more than you do. (MORE: Adv., không có NOUN)*  
 - You don't talk .....  
 - You talk .....



## NO OTHER

*Ghi chú:* Một câu mang ý nghĩa “NHẤT” có thể được diễn đạt bằng 4 cách.  
Nên lưu ý cách cuối cùng:

**Iron is the most useful metal.**  
**Iron is the most useful of all metals.**  
**Iron is more useful than other metals.**  
**(...than any other metal)**  
**No other metal is as useful as iron.**  
**(so)**

**Tom is the tallest boy in this class.**  
**Tom is the tallest of all the boys in this class.**  
**Tom is taller than the other boys in this class.**  
**(...than any other boy)**  
**No other boy in this class is as tall as Tom.**  
**(so)**

- larger than any other planet in the ...
1. Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.
  2. Mr. Johnson is the happiest man on earth.
  3. Emma was more beautiful than other girls in our village.
  4. Charlie Chaplin is the best-known comedian in the world.
  5. King Cobra (rắn hổ mang chúa) in Thailand is the most poisonous animal.
  6. Vatican City State is the smallest country in the world.
  7. Bắc Ninh is the smallest province in Vietnam.
  8. Chinese is used by more speakers than any other language.
  9. The hottest place in the world is El Aziziyah, Lybia.
  10. The lowest point of land in the world is the shore of the Dead Sea.
  11. The wettest place in the world is Tutunendo, Columbia.
  12. The largest freshwater lake is Lake Superior.
  13. The longest river in the world is the Nile.
  14. The deepest canyon (hẻm núi) in the world is the Colca River Canyon in Peru.
  15. The driest place in the world is the Atacama Desert in Chile.
  16. The coldest place in the world is Antarctica.
  17. The highest mountain in the world is Mt. Everest.
  18. The giraffe is the tallest animal in the world.
  19. The African elephant is the heaviest land animal in the world.
  20. The blue whale is the heaviest animal in the world.
  21. The cheetah is the fastest land animal in the world.
  22. “Star of Africa” in London is the largest diamond (kim cương) in the world.
  23. Alaska is the largest state in the United States.
  24. Tea is the most popular beverage (thức uống) in the world.



## ADVANCED

Tagore is one of the greatest poets of the world.

Very few poets of the world are as great as Tagore.

Tagore is greater than most other poets of the world.

1. He earns \$6000 a month, so do I. (high) → My salary .....
2. This car is half the price of that one. (twice) → That car costs .....
3. The diameter of a circle is twice (the length of) the radius. (long) → The .....
4. Carrie doesn't run as fast as Sarah. (runner) → Sarah is .....
5. This is the quickest way to get into the town centre. (quicker) → There .....
6. Anne is 43 years old, Lynne is 40 years old. → Lynne is exactly .....
7. I thought the result would be better than that. → The result was not .....
8. As it gets hotter, I drink more water. → The .....
9. Mark does not run as fast as he did. → Mark used .....
10. Chinese is used by more speakers than English. (Xem đầu bài 32, trang 127)  
→ Chinese is used by a ..... than English.  
→ English is used by ..... than Chinese.  
→ English is used by a ..... than Chinese.
11. John is as old as Paul. They were both born in the same year. (cùng tuổi)  
→ John is the ..... (Xem trang 168, số 2)  
→ John and Paul are the .....
12. Tom has twice as many apples as Mary. → Mary has .....
13. He is not such a big fool as you are. → He is not so ..... (Xem trang 46, số II)
14. The library is as large as the auditorium. (cùng kích cỡ)  
→ The library and the auditorium are the ..... (Xem trang 171, số 17)
15. *David Copperfield* is more popular than most other English books.  
→ Very few ..... ; → *David Copperfield* is one .....
16. Very few animals are as fast as the cheetah. → The cheetah .....
17. Poverty is not as terrible enemy as bad health. → Bad health is a .....
18. More people live to retirement age in Britain than in Vietnam. → Not as .....

## Idioms:

19. He was hurt and in a very poor state.  
→ He was breathing, but ..... than alive. (*add two words*)
20. Should you need a hand, .....  
→ I will be ..... happy to help you. (*add two words*)
21. Staying in a hotel costs \_\_\_\_\_ renting a room in a dormitory for a week.  
A. as much as twice                      B. twice as much as  
C. twice more than                      D. twice as
22. The entrance exam is much more difficult than the end-of-term one.  
A. many                      B. more and                      C. a lot                      D. far



23. The salary of a computer programmer is \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher.  
 A. as twice much as B. as much as twice of  
 C. twice as higher as that D. twice as high as that of
24. Please cut my hair \_\_\_\_\_ the style in this magazine.  
 A. the same length as B. the same length like  
 C. the same long like D. the same long as
25. This shirt is \_\_\_\_\_ that one.  
 A. as much expensive as B. not nearly as expensive as  
 C. a bit less expensive D. much far expensive than
26. As a millionaire who liked to show off her wealth, Mrs. Smith paid \_\_\_\_\_ we asked. (Đề thi Khối D - 2013)  
 A. four time much than B. four times as much as  
 C. four times much as D. four time as many as
27. "The inflation rate in Greece is five times \_\_\_\_\_ my country," he said. (Đề thi Khối D - 2010)  
 A. as high as that in B. as much as C. as many as that in D. more than
28. He finished the test \_\_\_\_\_ of all.  
 A. rapidly B. the most rapidly C. most rapidly D. more rapidly
29. At the clambake last week, Fred ate \_\_\_\_\_ Barney.  
 A. three times as many oysters as B. three times more oysters than  
 C. as many oysters three times as D. more oysters three times than
30. Tom has \_\_\_\_\_ Mary.  
 A. twice more apples than B. twice as many apples as  
 C. as many twice apples as D. as many apples as twice
31. Of the two sisters, Linda \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. is beautiful B. the most beautiful  
 C. is more beautiful D. is so beautiful as
32. The more I got to know Tom, \_\_\_\_\_ I liked him.  
 A. least B. the less C. the least D. the fewer
33. The rooms in the front \_\_\_\_\_ noisier than those in the back.  
 A. are more B. are little C. are very D. are much.
34. These two girls \_\_\_\_\_ that I can't tell them apart.  
 A. are so like B. are so alike C. are too alike D. alike enough
35. Jane is \_\_\_\_\_ age as Marry.  
 A. as same B. the most same C. the same D. more same
36. There is a yellow grammar book and a blue one, but the \_\_\_\_\_ is better.  
 A. first B. later C. second D. former

**Man is a reed, the weakest of nature, but he is a thinking reed** *Con người là một cây sậy, tức thực thể yếu đuối nhất trong tự nhiên, nhưng là một cây sậy biết suy nghĩ. – Blaise Pascal*



# Bài 22

## BIẾN ĐỔI VERB ↔ NOUN

### (STYLES)

---

*Ex. 1* I looked round the room.  
(verb)

I had a look round the room.  
(noun)

*Ex. 2* She always looks carefully at them.  
(verb) (adv.)

She always takes a careful look at them.  
(adj.) (noun)



**Nhận xét:**

- Giữ nguyên thì (tense) của Động từ.
- Đôi khi có biến đổi ADJ. ↔ ADV.

**Lưu ý:**

ADJ (ở trước noun)	↔	ADV (ở sau verb)
much	-	much
a great deal of	-	a great deal
a lot of	-	a lot
more	-	more
little	-	little
good	-	well
bad	-	badly
hard	-	hard
late	-	late
fast	-	fast



1. to *affect* = to have *effect* on
2. to *agree* with = to be in *agreement* with
3. to *call* = to give a *call*
4. to *complain* about = to have a *complaint* about
5. to *contact* = to have *contact* with
6. to *cry* = to give a *cry*
7. to *decide* = to make a *decision* / to make up one's *mind*
8. to *desire* = to have a *desire* to + V / to have a *desire* for + sth.
9. to *be determined* to = to have a *determination* to
10. to *discuss about* = to have a *discussion* about/on
11. to *dream* = to have a *dream*
12. to *drink* = to have a *drink*
13. to *emphasize* = to lay / to place *emphasis* on
14. to *end* = to put an *end* to
15. to *explain* = to give an *explanation* (of) [lưu ý: *explanation*]
16. to *fly* to = to take a *flight* to
17. to *influence* = to have *influence* on
18. to *intend* to + V / + V-ing = to have *intention* of + V-ing
19. to *be interested* in = to have *interest* in
20. to *kiss* = to give a *kiss*
21. to *know* = to have *knowledge* of
22. to *laugh* = to give a *laugh*
23. to *look* = to have a *look*
24. to *look at* = to have a *look at*
25. to *love* = to be in *love* (with)
26. to *meet* = to have a *meeting* (with)
27. to *photograph* = to have a *photograph* / *photographs* of
28. to *remember* = to keep / to bear in *mind*
29. to *research* = to do *research* on
30. to *pride oneself* on = to take *pride* in = to be *proud* of
31. to *rest* = to have a *rest*
32. to *ring* = to give a *ring*
33. to *search* for = to be in *search* of
34. to *sleep* = to have a *sleep*
35. to *smile* at sb. = to give sb. a *smile*
36. to *stop* = to make one's *stop*.
37. to *succeed* (in) = to be *successful* (in) = to make a *success* (in)
38. to *talk* to = to have a *talk* with
39. to *tend* to = to have a *tendency* to
40. to *think* about / of = to give *thought* to
41. to *try* to = to make an *effort* to / to make an *attempt* to
42. to *use* = to make *use* of
43. to *be used* = to be in *use*
44. to *visit* = to pay a *visit* to
45. to *warn* = to give a *warning*
46. to *welcome* = to give a *welcome*
47. to *wish* = to have a *wish*



## EXERCISE

1. He had no intention of making a long journey with her. → He didn't .....
2. She assured me of her intention to come. → She assured me that .....
3. She has no interest in what she is doing for the company.
4. She always takes a careful look at all the sentences the teacher is giving.
5. Please call me when you arrive.
6. He said he would visit us someday.
7. Mary doesn't know what will be for she never thinks of it.
8. They knew little about the job of their choice.
9. They tend to minimize problems.
10. You'd better give a clear explanation of it.
11. He made a decision to leave home.
12. Tom showed no interest in his wife's success.
13. Look at this picture!
14. After lunchtime she usually rests.
15. He was successful in getting a better job.
16. Are you determined to overcome the difficulties?
17. I'm very much in love with her.
18. I'd rather you gave thought to your behavior.
19. The child won't go to bed until his mother gives him a kiss.
20. They were discussing the problem of unemployment.
21. It's ten years since Alan paid a visit to Uncle Franken.
22. He had a talk with the headmaster about his son.
23. The driver made his stop for gas and new tires.
24. The bus made an immediate stop.
25. Susan cried when seeing a mouse jump out of her school bag.
26. She isn't interested in classical music.
27. Don't make a wrong decision!
28. This man intends to give us a hand.
29. They didn't think much about the situation of the poor.
30. Computers have been in use since 1948.
31. The old man gave a merry laugh.
32. My brother has a desire to make a world tour.
33. Would you like to drink?
34. They didn't have a determination to win in the competition.
35. We had a discussion on the question of how to raise funds.
36. We gave the Queen a joyful welcome with flowers, flags and songs.
37. She has a wish to become an actress.
38. People are giving a great deal of thought to AIDS.
39. I have little sleep these days.
40. He slept well last night.
41. We'll explain the instructions carefully.
42. The hunters intended to cut down these trees.
43. Experts have emphasized the need for population control.
44. She takes pride in her musical talents.



# Bài 23

## BECAUSE - BECAUSE OF ALTHOUGH - IN SPITE OF

o / v → ~

because	+	Clause
although	+	Clause
because of	+	Noun (Phrase)
in spite of / despite	+	Noun (Phrase)

to affect - effect	to approve - approval	to arrive - arrival
to ask - question	to ask for - request	to behave - behavior
to believe - belief	to close - closure	to decide - decision
to die - death	to discover - discovery	to fail - failure
to invent - invention	to know - knowledge	to refuse - refusal
to serve - service	to succeed - success	to try - effort
absent - absence	accurate - accuracy	beautiful - beauty
brave - bravery	convenient - convenience	courageous - courage
dangerous - danger	different - differences	difficult - difficulty
diligent - diligence	disabled - disability	effective - effectiveness
honest - honesty	hot - hotness / heat	ill - illness
important - importance	intelligent - intelligence	lazy - laziness
noisy - noise	old - old age	patient - patience
poor - poverty	pure - purity	safe - safety
selfish - selfishness	simple - simplicity	strong - strength
useful - usefulness	weak - weakness	wise - wisdom
determined - determination	expensive - expensiveness / high price	
fast - fastness / high speed	hot - hotness / heat / high temperature	
independent - independence	rich - richness / wealth / fortune	

- ✎
1. We can't sleep *because of* the hot weather.
  2. The flight was delayed *because of* the bad weather.
  3. They were late for the meeting *because* it rained heavily.
  4. She didn't go to school yesterday *because* she was ill.
  5. She doesn't go to school today *because of* his mother's serious illness.
  6. *In spite of* working hard, I could not pass my exams.
  7. They worked very hard *in spite of* their old age.
  8. This man is always happy *although* he was poor.



9. They didn't want to buy anything *in spite of* having a lot of money.
10. He drove his car *although* he didn't have a license.
11. We had a great time *in spite of* the rain.
12. She can't drive *because of* her blindness.
13. We're paying a big price *because of* your carelessness.
14. She got very angry *because* he refused to work.
15. *In spite of* working for the company for six months now, he never seems to know what to do.
16. *In spite of* her careful plan, Laura made a lot of mistakes.
17. We all admired this man *because* he was wise.
18. I prefer this dictionary to others *because of* its practical usefulness.
19. *Although* the new waitress is honest and diligent, the boss doesn't like her.
20. He married this woman *because* she was rich and beautiful.
21. The excursion (chuyến tham quan) was cancelled *because of* a sudden rain.
22. All the teachers love him *because* his conduct is good.
23. One cannot approach (đến gần) the sun *because* it is extremely hot.
24. The plane couldn't take off *because* it was foggy.
25. I couldn't study *because* it was noisy.
26. *Despite* their quick arrival, the firemen could do nothing.
27. *Although* he is very old, he runs fast.
28. We lost the game *because* the referee decided unfairly (bất công).
29. *Because* there were <sup>chướng ngại</sup> obstacles, the building didn't go along as planned.
30. They devoted their lives *because of* their deep love for the country.
31. Their new product didn't sell well *because of* its poor quality.
32. I declined to have this product advertised *because of* its high price.
33. *Because of* the gas explosion (*Because of* an exploding gas), several homes burned down.
34. We've lost everything *because of* your stupid mistake.
35. The student has scored very low marks *because of* lack of preparation.
36. They hardly understood each other *because of* the differences in languages.
37. The laser devices dominate in British hospitals *because* they are marvelously accurate.
38. *Because of* the development of birth-control, women could delay having children or avoid having them altogether.
39. *Although* both teams had a strong determination to win but they knew it was going to be no easy task.
40. She accepted the job *in spite of* the low salary.
41. The firemen did well *because of* their careful preparation for catastrophic gas explosions.
42. We recognized him *in spite of* his mask (mặt nạ).
43. *Though* he is intelligent, he can't do all these tests well.



44. *In spite of* knowing these events very well, this man could not become a historian.
45. Sarah can't climb up the tree *because of* her fear of heights.
46. We don't spend much time on our homework *because* a lot of devices for the home were invented.
47. The president resigned from his duty *because* he had health problems.
48. *Because* the climate is changing, polar bears are in danger of becoming extinct.
49. Jerry continued to be denied a promotion *despite* his competence (năng lực) and experience.
50. *Because of* his lack of courage, Nathan didn't participate in the competition.
51. *Though* he has been absent frequently, he has managed to pass the test.
52. It was difficult for me to get a loan *because of* my unstable employment.
53. *In spite of* my arriving late the night of my stay, the attendant was waiting for me and had everything prepared.
54. *Because of* thick fog at the airport, Louis and Tim had to stay in Ankara one more day.
55. Our school is still seriously overcrowded *in spite of* the opening of two new schools.
56. This hotel is highly rated *because* its service for the public is very well.
57. All the flights were cancelled *because of* the harsh weather conditions.
58. *Because* the walkway is slippery, please don't let your children walk alone.
59. *Despite* their great efforts, the team had to suffer an unfortunate defeat.
60. Alex missed the penalty *because of* lack of concentration.
61. *Despite* her patience, her son's behaviour seemed never to change.
62. My mother is always complaining *because of* the untidiness of my room.
63. She had to give up singing *because* she had a serious throat problem.
64. We decided to buy that house *because of* its low price.
65. Only the members of his own family and his most intimate friends knew how deeply he suffered *because of* the death in combat of his youngest son.
66. *Because of* the electricity cut off, we went to bed early.
67. *In spite of* her stomachache, she decided to go to work.
68. *Because of* the closure of the jail, dozens of prison officers lost their jobs.
69. People always trust him *because of* his honesty.
70. *Although* the dog appeared harmless, it was, in fact, quite dangerous.
71. They sacked him *because of* his rude behavior.
72. *Despite* Jane's love of animals, she doesn't want to get one for pet.
73. The World Trade Center fell down *because of* a terrorist attack.
74. *Despite* the approval of same sex marriages (hôn nhân đồng giới) in some countries, lesbians, gays, bisexuals and transgenders continue to demand for stronger human rights protection, equality and an end to discrimination.



# Bài 24

## ADJECTIVE - ADVERB

---

**ADJECTIVES****ADVERBS**late (*trễ*)

{ late (*trễ*)  
lately (*gần đây*)

hard (*chăm, mạnh*)

{ hard (*chăm, mạnh*)  
hardly (= *almost not, hầu như không*)

near (*gần*)

{ near (*gần*)  
nearly (= *almost, hầu như gần như*)

deep (*sâu, thiết tha*)

{ deep (*sâu*)  
deeply (*thiết tha, sâu sắc*)

**ADJECTIVE****ADVERB**

lovely



in a lovely manner / way

friendly

in a friendly manner / way

silly

in a silly manner / way

cowardly

in a silly manner / way

lively

in a lively manner / way

motherly

in a motherly manner / way

brotherly

in a brotherly manner / way

sisterly

in a sisterly manner / way

manly

in a manly manner / way

(Xem thêm Bài 29 *Linking Verbs* trang 118)**EXERCISE****I. Choose the correct item:**

- He (*correct, correctly*) defined the terms.  
The answer sounded (*correctly, correct*).
- It was a (*dangerously, dangerous*) lake to swim in.  
The man was (*dangerous, dangerously*) drunk.  
The gas smelled (*dangerously, dangerous*).
- She performed (*magnificent, magnificently*).  
It was a (*magnificent, magnificently*) beautiful performance.
- Her voice sounds (*beautifully, beautiful*).  
She sang the song (*exact, exactly*) as it was written.



5. English and German are (*close, closely*) related.  
There is still a very (*close, closely*) bond between mother and daughter.  
Fortunately, my best friend lives very (*close, closely*) by.
6. I've (*near, nearly*) finished the book you gave me.  
My grandparents live quite (*near, nearly*).
7. **Be (*neat, neatly*) in appearance; in particular, iron your clothes, make sure all buttons are closed, keep your hair (*neat, neatly*) and keep your shoes, fingernails, and teeth (*clean / cleanly*). (Xem trang 103)**
8. Jack is good at tennis and he always plays (*fair, fairly*).  
He did (*fair, fairly*) well in his examination.
9. Although Sofia is dieting, she has (*hard, hardly*) lost any weight.  
The athletes have been practising very (*hard, hardly*) for Athens.  
I could (*hard, hardly*) hear him at the back.
10. Amnesty International (Tổ chức Ân xá Quốc tế) says that several people are (*wrong, wrongly*) imprisoned.  
Something has gone (*wrong, wrongly*) with my car.
11. The decision to elect him as chairman was (*just, justly*) made.  
Did you catch the plane? - Yes, I got there (*just, justly*) in time.
12. My train arrived (*late, lately*) as usual.  
I'm watching the (*late, lately*) film.  
They always get home (*late, lately*) on weekends.  
I think you have spent too much money (*late, lately*).
13. Linda is a (*pretty, prettily*) nice girl.  
Look, isn't she dancing (*pretty, prettily*)?
14. You'll have to hit the ball quite (*high, highly*) to get it over that net.  
The Concorde used to fly much (*high, highly*) than most other airplanes.  
He is very (*high, highly*) thought of within the company.
15. Their son has been a (*deep, deeply*) disappointment to them.  
He is (*deep, deeply*) grateful for our support.
16. Please be back at 6 o'clock (*sharp, sharply*).  
The father spoke (*sharp, sharply*) to the boy.  
The road bends (*sharp, sharply*) to the left.
17. I entered the classroom (*quiet, quietly*) because I was late.  
The room got (*quiet, quietly*) when the professor entered.  
The students sat (*quiet, quietly*) at their desks.
18. I tasted the soup (*careful, carefully*) because it was hot.  
The soup tasted (*good, well*)
19. Susan smiled (*cheerful, cheerfully*). She seemed (*cheerful, cheerfully*).
20. Nancy is a (*good, well*) dancer. She dances very (*good, well*).
21. I could not sleep (*good, well*) last night, so I feel (*horrible, horribly*) today.
22. He was a very (*sensibly, sensible*) person. He acted very (*sensible, sensibly*).
23. My wife felt rather (*nervous, nervously*) about the play she was in, but she performed (*wonderful, wonderfully*).



24. It's a (*beautiful, beautifully*) drawn picture. It looks (*beautiful, beautifully*)
25. You appear so (*happy, happily*) that something great must have happened.
26. The sky grew (*dark, darkly*) as the storm approached.
27. Ella was the (*better, best*) of the two sisters at gymnastics.
28. The village was (*bare, barely*) visible through the dense fog.
29. Mr. Whitaker is a (*real, really*) great writer who has won numerous awards.
30. Please complete and submit your report in a (*timely, quickly*) manner.

## II. Rewrite the sentences, replacing adjectives with adverbs and vice versa:

Are you **good** at singing? (**good** = adjective)

→ Do you sing **well**? (**well** = adverb)

John Dixon was an **excellent** footballer. (**excellent** = adjective)

→ John Dixon played football **excellently**. (**excellently** = adverb)

1. They were *late* comers. → They .....
2. This is a *fast* car. → This .....
3. She has a *beautiful* singing voice. → She .....
4. Maria cooks *well* and sings *excellently*. → Maria .....
5. Betty designed fashions very *cleverly*. → Betty .....
6. Yes, I have been a *bad* company manager. → Yes, I .....
7. He gave me a *silly* answer. → He .....
8. The young woman continued her *slow* run through the park. → The .....
9. Betty was *successful* in writing the essay. → Betty .....
10. John and Paul used to be *good* tennis-players. → John and Paul .....
11. Does she always work *effectively*? → Is .....
12. How *gracefully* these girls danced! → What .....
13. Mrs. Jones cooks very *well*. → Mrs. Jones ..... ; → Mrs. Jones .....
14. Robert is a *better* student than I am. → Robert ..... ; → I don't .....
15. Don't be *lazy* when you study! → Don't .....
16. She gave me a *friendly* smile. → She .....
17. The teacher speaks in a *clear* voice. → The teacher .....
18. He made a *wrong* choice when he decided to leave school. → He .....
19. We didn't set out early because it was raining *heavily*. → We .....
20. We all remember he performed *excellently* last year. → We .....
21. The accuracy of his rifle shooting is *marvellous*. → His .....
22. He was *calm* when he spoke to the police. → He .....
23. He is a *frequent* visitor of the National Botanic Gardens. → He.....
24. The mother was *gentle* as she held the baby in her arms. → The mother ....
25. I took a *peaceful* walk in the woods. → I .....
26. They were *passionate* in their beliefs. → They .....
27. She has *probably* found a new job. → It .....
28. We received a *warm* welcome. → We .....
29. She was *lovely* in the way she talked. → She .....
30. His anxiety to go was *obvious*. → He was .....



### III. Object complements:

Cần phân biệt hai cấu trúc câu sau đây:

1) He keeps the books carefully.

(**carefully**: Adverb, bổ nghĩa cho động từ *keeps*)

2) He keeps the books clean.

(**clean**: Adjective, làm Complement [bổ nghĩa] cho Object *the books*)

#### Select the correct answer

1. Rainy days make me \_\_\_\_\_. (*sad / sadly*)
2. She wrote the letter \_\_\_\_\_. (*careful / carefully*)
3. The Governor set the prisoners \_\_\_\_\_. (*free / freely*)
4. He has cut your hair very \_\_\_\_\_. (*short / shortly*)
5. Have I made my meaning \_\_\_\_\_? (*clear / clearly*)
6. I want to see you \_\_\_\_\_. (*happy / happily*)
7. They found the meeting hall \_\_\_\_\_. (*empty / emptily*)
8. He prefers his coffee \_\_\_\_\_. (*strong / strongly*)
9. We proved him \_\_\_\_\_. (*wrong / wrongly*)
10. Let's study the matter \_\_\_\_\_. (*thorough / thoroughly*)
11. I can't spell these words \_\_\_\_\_. (*correct / correctly*)
12. Get yourself \_\_\_\_\_. (*ready / readily*).
14. Keep your country \_\_\_\_\_. (*tidy / tidily*)
15. How did you get yourself so \_\_\_\_\_? (*dirty / dirtily*)
16. You should keep your spirit \_\_\_\_\_. (*high / highly*)
17. Instructions will make the work \_\_\_\_\_. (*easy / easily*)
18. Even a child can do the work \_\_\_\_\_. (*easy / easily*)
19. He poured the milk \_\_\_\_\_. (*slow / slowly*)
20. They sneaked out of the house \_\_\_\_\_. (*quiet / quietly*)
21. He plays the flute \_\_\_\_\_. (*beautiful / beautifully*)
22. She slammed the door \_\_\_\_\_. (*angry / angrily*)
23. Everybody considers him \_\_\_\_\_. (*professional / professionally*)
24. The movie made her \_\_\_\_\_. (*sad / sadly*)
25. A good jacket can keep your body \_\_\_\_\_ (*warm / warmly*)
26. The hungry cat looked at the chicken \_\_\_\_\_. (*hungry / hungrily*)
27. They found the questions \_\_\_\_\_. (*hard / hardly*)
28. He left the back door \_\_\_\_\_. (*open / openly*)
29. They left the party \_\_\_\_\_. (*slow / slowly*)
30. I drank the milk \_\_\_\_\_. (*hot / hotly*)
31. He plays the piano \_\_\_\_\_. (*terrible / terribly*)
32. The evidence proved the accused \_\_\_\_\_. (*innocent / innocently*)
33. Jack understands things \_\_\_\_\_. (*quick / quickly*)
34. His perpetual lateness drove me \_\_\_\_\_. (*mad / madly*)
35. A fridge keeps food \_\_\_\_\_. (*fresh / freshly*)



# Bài 25

## CAUSATIVE FORM

**I) Causative Form** được dùng để nói đến một công việc mà ta không tự làm nhưng **nhờ vả, thuê mướn hoặc sai bảo** người khác làm.

**Active :** Subject + have + Noun + Bare Infinitive  
Subject + get + Noun + To-Infinitive

**Passive :** Subject + have *hoặc* get + Noun + V(3) [+ by... ]

**Examples:** - *She had someone repair her watch. (Active)*  
- *She got someone to repair her watch. (Active)*  
- *She had her watch repaired. (Passive)*  
- *She got her watch repaired. (Passive)*

1. She will ask someone to fix the lamps in her room. → She will have .....
2. He asked his mother to lengthen the trousers.
3. You should arrange to install central heating before winter comes.
4. We ordered somebody to whitewash the ceiling.
5. I'm going to tell someone to add an extra room.
6. My father tuned their piano for them yesterday.
7. She paid a French ophthalmologist for an examination of her eyes.
8. The tree was so diseased. We asked someone to cut it down.
9. We must find an expert to check all these machines.
10. Did you tell someone to translate the report into French?
11. My parents paid someone to redecorate their living room last year.
12. Mary has asked a friend to type all of her papers.
13. Morris ordered his dog to bring him the newspaper.
14. Where do you take your photographs to be enlarged?
15. James pays them to clean his shirts at the drycleaners.
16. We are going to ask the plumber (thợ ống nước) to install a new shower.
17. You should ask someone to water your plants while you are on holiday.
18. Your room needs cleaning (Your room wants cleaning).
19. She doesn't like ironing so the cleaner does it for her.
20. (Đề thi ĐH Khối D, 2014): "My secretary will book you an afternoon flight and have you \_\_\_\_\_ at the airport."  
A. picked up      B. picking up      C. pick up      D. to pick up

**II) Causative Form** cũng để tường thuật tai nạn hoặc việc không hay.

*They had their suitcases stolen at the airport yesterday.*

*We had our electricity cut off all day.*

*He had his garden destroyed by the storm.*



## Bài 26

# IT IS ESSENTIAL THAT...

It is/was <b>essential</b>	that	} + Subject + (should [not]) V <sub>(1)</sub>
It is/was <b>important</b>	that	
It is/was <b>necessary</b>	that	
It is/was <b>vital</b>	that	
It is/was <b>urgent</b>	that	
It is/was <b>advisable</b>	that	
It is/was <b>recommended</b>	that	
It is/was <b>crucial</b>	that	
It is/was <b>natural</b>	that	
It is/was <b>better</b>	that	
It is/was <b>desirable</b>	that	

- 1) It is **imperative** \_\_\_\_ what to do when there is a fire. (Đề thi Khối D - 2010)  
 A. he must know about      B. that everyone know  
 C. that he knew      D. we knew
- 2) It is **important** that the office \_\_\_\_ your record. (Đề thi Khối D - 2007)  
 A. will confirm      B. confirm      C. confirms      D. must confirm

<b>suggest</b>	that	} + Subject + (should [not]) V <sub>(1)</sub>
<b>advise</b>	that	
<b>recommend</b>	that	
<b>insist</b>	that	
<b>ask</b>	that	
<b>beg</b>	that	
<b>request</b>	that	
<b>demand</b>	that	
<b>propose</b>	that	
<b>order</b>	that	
<b>command</b>	that	
<b>urge</b>	that	
<b>arrange</b>	that	
<b>decide</b>	that	

- 1) Susan's doctor **insists** \_\_\_\_ for a few days. (Đề thi Khối D - 2009)  
 A. her resting      B. that she rest      C. her to rest      D. that she is resting
- 2) They **advise** that a passport \_\_\_\_ with you at all time.  
 (Đề Kiểm tra HK2 lớp 12 của Sở GD và ĐT Tp.HCM ngày 11-05-2015)  
 A. be carried      B. should carried      C. must be carried      D. is carried



**A Practical English Grammar §§ 235-236:**

1. It is essential for him to be prepared for this.  
= It is essential that he should be prepared for this.
2. It is better for him to hear it from you.  
= It is better that he should hear it from you.
3. She advised keeping the gate locked.  
= She advised us to keep it locked.  
= She advised that we should keep the gate locked.  
= She advised that the gate should be kept locked.
4. He arranged that I should go abroad.  
= He arranged for me to go abroad.
5. They arranged that the minister should be met at the airport.  
= They arranged for the minister to be met at the airport.
6. He proposed/suggested that we should try other remedies.  
= He proposed/suggested that other remedies should be tried.  
= He proposed/suggested (our) trying other remedies.

**More examples:**

- *It is desirable that Mr. Hanson (should) hand in his resignation.*
- *It is important that you (should) be at home when the lawyers arrive.*
- *It is essential that the car (should) be waiting at the airport.*
- *It is imperative that products (should) be tested carefully.*
- *It is vital that everybody (should) get there on time.*
- *The football coach insisted that the players (should) follow a strict diet.*
- *I suggest that your cousin (should) apply at once.*
- *Carl was injured last week, and the doctor recommended that he (should) not play in the next match.*
- *The boss insisted that Sam (should) not be at the meeting.*
- *The company asked that employees (should) not accept personal phone calls during business hours.*

**M**ost important of all, to be successful in life demands that a man make a personal commitment to excellence and to victory Để thành đạt trong đời, điều quan trọng nhất là ta phải tận tâm tận lực vươn tới mức ưu tú và giành chiến thắng. — Vince Lombardi

**TRANSFORMATION**

1. The candidates must have a thorough medical examination.  
→ It is essential that .....
2. They decided to recycle the metal in discarded products. (Passive Voice)  
→ They decided that .....



- 3. “Why don’t you study Maths at evening class?” she said to him.  
→ She suggested that .....
- 4. “If I were you, I’d have the beef,” the waiter said to us.  
→ The waiter recommended that .....
- 5. All parties are supposed to sign the contract.  
→ It is important that .....
- 6. “I would like a full inquiry to take place,” said the Prime Minister.  
→ The Prime Minister requested that .....
- 7. I suggest rebuilding the database. (Passive Voice)  
→ I suggest that .....
- 8. He ordered the goods to be sent by air.  
→ He ordered that .....
- 9. Be sure that a properly qualified nurse gives you your medication.  
→ It is essential that you .....
- 10. Fred advises Sue not to take this dangerous job.  
→ Fred advises that .....
- 11. Do not drink alcohol before driving.  
→ It is important that .....
- 12. We need to urgently transform the global energy system.  
→ It is urgent that .....

# Bài 27

## VERB TENSES

### LỚP 10

- 1. Nobody (write) to me since my birthday.
- 2. He often (cook) his own breakfast.
- 3. You (see) the film on TV last night?
- 4. That’s a very old car. I (have) it for ages.
- 5. I’m saving money. By the end of the next month I (save) 200 dollars.
- 6. Please don’t make so much noise. I (study).
- 7. How many cigarettes he (smoke) a day?
- 8. I (call) Jim at 9 last night, but he (not be) at home. He (study) in the library.
- 9. Today is the 14<sup>th</sup> of June. I (buy) this book two weeks ago. In other words, I (have) this book for two weeks.
- 10. When Professor Jones (retire) next month, he (teach) for 43 years.
- 11. Mary can’t come to the phone because she (wash) her hair.
- 12. Mary couldn’t come to the phone because she (wash) her hair.
- 13. Water (consist) of hydrogen and oxygen.
- 14. We (pay) a visit to Oxford recently.



15. There (be) only 14 mountains that (reach) above 8,000 meters.
16. If pigs (have) wings, they (fly).
17. If you (add) oil to water, the oil (float) on the surface of the water.
18. What you (do) when you (grow) up, my boy?
19. This child usually (spend) hours playing with a tin box.
20. When I was a child, I usually (spend) hours playing with a tin box.
21. They (begin) to live in Australia in 2013.
22. They (live) in Australia since 2013.
23. My grandfather (be) in hospital for three months.
24. I (not do) my homework yet.
25. I (not see) your husband in the pub yesterday.
26. Water (freeze) at thirty-two degrees Fahrenheit or zero degrees Celsius.
27. When we met, she said she (be) ill for three months.
28. He didn't want to go out with us because he (not do) his homework yet.
29. She doesn't want to go out with us because she (not do) her homework yet.
30. I (be) in your hometown last month. I never (be) there before.
31. Columbus (discover) America more than 400 years ago.
32. By 1975, they (live) in Saigon for 20 years.
33. Birds (build) their nests in the summer and (fly) to the south in the winter.
34. You (see) the film last night?
35. Tom usually (get) up at 7.30. Yesterday he (get) up at 8.00
36. Alexander Fleming (receive) Nobel Prize in 1945.
37. Ann (make) a dress for herself at the moment.
38. John (buy) that book as soon as he (receive) his money next week.
39. I (visit) my uncle if I (not be) busy next weekend.
40. I drove too fast. I wish I (drive) more carefully.
41. Children usually (not like) tea and coffee.
42. When I entered Nguyễn Công Trứ School, I (learn) English for four years.
43. If he (know) your telephone number he would have rung you.
44. Do you see John? He (stand) in front of the bookshop over there.
45. Maria (go) to church every Sunday morning.
46. I (not hear) from Susan lately.
47. It (rain) for two hours.
48. We (not be) in class if today (be) Sunday.
49. We (stay) here until our father (return) tomorrow.
50. What you (buy) for Tom's birthday next week?
51. If someone asked you how to get to the library, what you (tell) him?
52. It's two o'clock. I (not finish) my homework yet.
53. It was two o'clock. He (not finish) his homework yet.
54. "Is your father at home?" – "No, he is away on business. If you have a message for him, I (give) it to him as soon as he (get) home next week."
55. The Browns (be) in Europe three or four times.
56. I (write) three short stories.



57. When you (come) back next month, perhaps I (write) seven short stories.
58. Did he say that he (arrive) next week?
59. I wish I (be) ten years younger.
60. We all agree that health (make) us happier than money does.
61. Up to now I (never, see) such a big fire.
62. So far this child (never, see) such a big fire.
63. Up to then I never (see) such a big fire.
64. I'm busy at the moment. I (redesign) the sitting room.
65. Your mother (get) over her illness yet?
66. People (speak) English in most of Canada.
67. They (live) in Switzerland for 7 years when the Second World War started.
68. By November next year I (work) for this company for 20 years.
69. Don't speak if nobody (ask) you.
70. The teacher hopes we (pass) our exams.
71. The teacher hoped we (pass) our exams.
72. The room is dirty. I (not clean) it for nearly two weeks.
73. The floor was dirty. They (not wash) it for over two weeks.
74. – "When (she, move) to the USA?"  
– "I think it was when she was 20, and she (live) there ever since."
75. Water (not run) downhill if there (not be) gravity.
76. We (go) for a walk if it (be) nice now.
77. The Nile (flow) into the Mediterranean.
78. Mr. Brown (have) a cold shower every morning, but at the moment he (have) a hot bath.
79. She always (bring) an umbrella with her whenever she went out.
80. He always (bring) an umbrella with him whenever he goes out.
81. I'll get home around six. When I (get) home, I (call) Sharon.
82. If you (not do) as you are told, you'll lose your job.
83. He drives dangerously. I wish he (drive) more carefully.
84. She (buy) lottery tickets for years but she (never, win) a penny so far.
85. Two and two (make) four.
86. "Where are you?" – "I (have) a bath."
87. If he (not, confess) to me, I won't believe him any more.
88. Mary (not, have to) do housework every day.
89. If only my mother (not empty) these bottles. There's nothing to drink now.
90. He (write) a letter now. He (already, write) two letters this morning.
91. "Where is Mr. Green?" – "He (go) out ten minutes ago."
92. If the weather is too bad, we (not, go) for a picnic.
93. Water (boil) at 100 degrees Celsius.
94. We (not, see) any interesting films lately.
95. Victoria (wait) for half an hour when the doctor finally arrived.
96. Anita (study) very hard at the moment.
97. You (see) Nam recently? – No, I (see) him a year ago.




98. Don't phone me between 7 and 8. We (have) dinner then.
99. When Sarah (graduate) from university next year, she (study) English for nearly four years.
100. She will go abroad as soon as she (leave) school next month.

## LỚP 11, 12

1. George (fall) off the ladder when he was painting the ceiling.
2. Since Tom (leave) school, I (not hear) from him.
3. He thanked me for what I (do) for him.
4. The weather was far worse than any of us (think).
5. Look! They (cut) down such nice trees.
6. When Queen Victoria (die) in 1901, she (reign) for over 60 years.
7. It (be) ages since she (write) to me.
8. I lit the fire at 6.00 and it (burn) bright when Tom came in at 7.00.
9. The next century (begin) on the first of January.
10. He gave me the book, (thank) me for lending it to him and (say) that he (enjoy) it very much; but I (know) that he (not read) it because most of the pages (be) still uncut.
11. It's high time they (take) precautions.
12. Had I known that you were still reading those newspapers I (not, throw) them away.
13. This is the first time I (see) snow.
14. She heard voices and realized that there (be) 3 persons in next room.
15. She saw empty glasses and cups and realized that 3 people (be) in the room.
16. When I opened the window, the bird (blow) the rain in.
17. A golden key (open) every door.
18. I'd rather you (not tell) anyone what I said.
19. I didn't want to meet Paul so when he entered the room I (leave).
20. When I arrived Ann (just, leave), so we only had time for a few words.
21. It's important that she (remember) to take her medicine twice a day.
22. My views (change) a lot since I (graduate) from school.
23. I (make) a cake when the light went out. I had to finish it in the dark.
24. It's time the children (be) in bed.
25. I rushed to the station and (find) that I (miss) the train.
26. I usually got up before the sun (rise).
27. Yesterday John took a nap from 1:00 to 2:00. I came at 1:45. When I (get) there, John (sleep). He (sleep) for 45 minutes by the time I came.
28. It (be) two years since they last (appear) on stage together.
29. As soon as the new year (begin) at zero hour I'll open this wine bottle.
30. I (never, be) to Greece until Sally and I (go) there last summer.
31. It (rain) now. It (begin) raining two hours ago. So it (rain) for two hours.
32. Many people still refused to believe that smoking (be) dangerous.
33. The train no sooner (leave) the station than the storm (occur).



34. When I (learn) a thousand English words, shall I be able to read a newspaper?
35. He (walk) very quickly when I (meet) him yesterday.
36. I (not, hear) the thunder during the storm last night because I (sleep).
37. She (work) at the hospital for two years and she (decide) to give up the job.
38. She (work) at the hospital for 2 years when she (decide) to give up the job.
39. If I (be) a ghost, I (try) to frighten all the people I dislike.
40. He (know) her a long time before he finally (get) married to her.
41. This is the second time you (break) a glass. You (break) one yesterday.
42. While he (stand) there he saw two men enter the bar.
43. How long (smoke) when he finally (decide) to quit?
44. Were I in his shoes, I (refuse).
45. I'd rather she (stay) at home. She's too old to take a long trip.
46. When he grew old he often (think) of all the things he (do) when he (be) young.
47. He (play) the guitar outside her house when someone opened the window and (throw) out a bucket of water.
- 
48. She talks as if she (be) the most intelligent person in the world.
49. What he (do) since he (be) here?
50. It is imperative that each student (bring) his or her textbook to class.
51. I (learn) French for four years when my uncle asked me to leave for Paris with him.
52. The Titanic (cross) the Atlantic when it (strike) an iceberg (tảng băng trôi).
53. It's high time you (buy) a new coat.
54. How long you (learn) how to drive?
55. How long it (be) since you last (smoke) a cigarette?
56. No sooner had we started our holidays than we (lose) all of our money.
57. He said she (borrow) from him so much and he (not lend) her any more money.
58. When Armstrong made his memorable step, it was the first time man (set) foot on the moon.
59. Before my trip to Paris two years ago, I (never, be) to France.
60. The driver (fall) asleep at the wheel before he (have) an accident.
61. If only I (not, have) to do my housework now.
62. Should you need me, I (be) there.
63. She walks as if she (be) a supermodel.
64. He told the story as if he (be) there.
65. Mary looked so sad. She (cry) before we got there.
66. No one even noticed when I got home. They (watch) TV.
67. Suddenly she gave a loud scream and (fall) to the ground.
68. No one could explain how the prisoner (escape) from the prison.



69. It was the worst storm that we (ever, have).
70. They (live) here for 3 years before they (move) to Seattle three months ago.
71. He heard the news, (go) to the telephone and (call) a friend.
72. We stood patiently, hoping that change (occur).
73. It is essential that he (be) present during the ceremony.
74. Jessica (never, fall) in love until she (meet) Ben two years ago.
75. I (step) on the brakes. Otherwise, I would have hit the child on the bicycle.
76. If I (not, step) on the brakes, I would have hit the child on the bicycle.
77. She (run); otherwise, she would have missed her bus.
78. Her doctor suggested that she (reduce) her working hours.
79. The teacher suggested that we (not, waste) time playing video games.
80. The doctor insisted that she (walk) at least a mile a day.

**Đề thi TNPT năm 2013:**

1. As soon as I saw the advertisement, I \_\_\_\_\_ the house agent.  
A. phone      B. had phoned      C. have phoned      D. phoned
2. She was overjoyed because her article \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. has been published      B. has published  
C. had been published      D. had published
3. At present, the new director \_\_\_\_\_ to foster a culture of open communication within the company.  
A. tried      B. was trying      C. tries      D. is trying
4. She started working as a teacher of English ten years ago.  
A. She has worked with a teacher of English for ten years.  
B. She had worked with a teacher of English for ten years.  
C. She has been working as a teacher of English for ten years.  
D. She had been working as a teacher of English for ten years.

**Đề thi TNPT năm 2014:**

5. My students promised that they would hand in their assignments \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the previous day      B. yesterday  
C. the following day      D. tomorrow

**Đề thi THPT Quốc gia năm 2015:**

6. Students will not be allowed into the exam room if they \_\_\_\_\_ their student cards.  
A. produced      B. hadn't produced      C. didn't produce      D. don't produce

**TRANSFORMATION**

**She last wrote to me nearly two years ago.**

→ **She has not written to me for nearly two years.**

→ **It is (It has been) nearly two years since she [last] wrote to me.**

→ **The last time she wrote to me was nearly two years ago.**

→ **Xem thêm ví dụ d) ở cuối trang 116.**

1. I am sorry that I didn't finish my homework last night. → I wish .....
2. I would prefer you to pay him immediately. → I'd rather .....
3. Scientists began to fight against AIDS in 1980. → Scientists have .....



4. The last time I drove was a fortnight ago. (*fortnight* = 14 days / 2 weeks).  
 → I last .....  
 → I have .....  
 → It is .....
5. The Browns began to live in London twenty years ago. (Use **Present Perfect Tense**)
6. John has worked for this electronics firm since 12th July 1999. (Use **Simple Past Tense**)
7. Robert and Jenny have been married for four years. → Robert and Jenny .....
8. What is your date of birth? → When .....
9. His mother came up to him just after he fell onto the floor. → No sooner.....
10. I'll see Jack tomorrow. I'll give him this letter at once → As soon as .....
11. Please don't tell him. → I'd rather you .....
12. You'd better have haircut. → It's time you.....
13. My advice to you is to call the police. → If I.....
14. Shakespeare has been dead for over 400 years. (Use "ago")
15. I regret spending too much money on clothes.  
 → I'm sorry I .....  
 → I wish I .....
16. Bulgaria has been in the European Union since 2007. (Use "in 2007")
17. Tom started learning the guitar a month ago. (Use **Present Perfect Tense**)
18. This is my first visit to London. → This is the first time .....
19. Michael learned how to sing when he was small. (Use "since")
20. She stopped playing volleyball when she broke her wrist. (Use "since")
21. Mary waited until her husband had left before she started cooking.  
 → Not until .....
22. Julia has been working for this company for six years. → Julia started.....
23. What is your date of birth? → When .....
24. I'd like him to give me a lift. → I'd rather he .....
25. It's a pity they don't get on with each other better. → I wish .....
26. I hope you won't tell anyone what I've told you. → I'd rather you .....
27. I wish he would learn to make his own breakfast. → It's high time .....
28. I regret not having taken the chance to travel when I was younger. → If only
29. He treats his servants like children. → He treats his servants as if .....
30. I'd prefer her to answer the letter herself. → I'd rather she .....
31. You ought to settle the matter once and for all. → It's time you .....
32. I haven't smoked for six years. (Use "give up")
33. On my walk home from school, I dropped my mobile phone. → While .....
34. I advise you not to lie in the sun for such a long time. → If .....
35. When she was young, she often wore high-heeled boots.  
 → When she was young, she \_\_\_\_\_ wear high-heeled boots.  
 → When she was young, she \_\_\_\_\_ wear high-heeled boots.
36. I'll visit him when I go to Germany next month. → I am .....



37. "Let's do something to help these elderly people" a young man said.  
→ A young man suggested .....  
→ A young man suggested that .....
38. Michael Jackson has sold more albums since his death.  
→ Michael Jackson has sold more albums since he .....
39. Betty is still in London. (Use "not... yet")
40. Abraham Lincoln (1809-1865). → Abraham Lincoln .....
41. He last lay in this bed 2 month ago. → He has .....
42. How long have you been playing golf? (Use "take up")
43. The Queen will come tomorrow. We shall sing the national anthem.  
→ When the Queen .....
44. You should clean the windows now. → It's high time you .....
45. Their wedding was 25 years ago. → They ..... married 25 years ago.  
.....→ They ..... married for 25 years.
46. How long have Helen and Robert been married? → When did.....?
47. How long have you worked here? → When did .....
48. The defendant denied killing his wife. → The defendant denied that .....
49. It is essential for them to finish the project before the deadline (hạn chót).  
→ It is essential that .....
50. I suggest rewriting the report. → I suggest that .....

## GHI CHÚ

1. ***I have got a problem.*** Thông dụng trong văn nói, trong trường hợp này ***have got*** ở thì **Present**, chứ không phải thì **Present Perfect**. ***I've got a problem = I have a problem.*** Không có hình thức quá khứ.  
(Betty Schramper Azar, *Understanding and Using English Grammar*, p. 40)  
Tương tự, ***have got to = have to.*** Xem Sách Giáo Khoa lớp 11 đầu trang 13:  
*All you've got to do is call,*  
*And I'll be there, yes I will,*  
*You've got a friend!*
2. **Thì Present Continuous** có thể thay thế ***be going to*** để chỉ hành động được dự định làm trong tương lai. Hai câu sau đây hoàn toàn đồng nghĩa:  
*I am going to meet Larry at Alice's Restaurant at six.*  
*I am meeting Larry at Alice's Restaurant at six.*  
(Betty Schramper Azar, *Understanding and Using English Grammar*, p. 54)  
Sách Giáo Khoa lớp 12 cuối trang 19:  
*I am staying here until the middle of August. Then I am going on holiday to Scotland.*



# Bài 28

## EMPHASIS

---

### I. CLEFT SENTENCES

#### 1. Oxford Guide to English Grammar §51.3:

England won the World Cup in 1966.  
Subject                      Object                      Adverbial

- a) We can emphasize the subject, object or adverbial.

Subject : *It was **England** who won the World Cup in 1966.*

Object : *It was **the World Cup** (that) England won in 1966.*

Adverbial : *It was **in 1966** (that) England won the World Cup.*

- b) We use **who, which** or **that** with the **subject**. With an **object** or **adverbial** we normally use **that**.

- c) We can include a phrase with **not**.

*It was **England, not Germany**, who won the World Cup in 1966.*

*It was **in 1966, not 1970**, that England won the World Cup.*

- d) When a pronoun comes after **be**, it is usually in the object form.

*It was **me** who told you, remember?*

- e) We can also emphasize a whole clause.

*It was **because they were playing in London** that England had an advantage.*

#### 2. More examples:

- a) I need your help, not your sympathy.

*It is **your help** that I need, not your sympathy.*

- b) It gets really cold only in the winter.

*It is **only in the winter** that it gets really cold.*

- c) His attitude that annoyed me.

*It was **his attitude** that annoyed me.*

- d) She last wrote to me nearly two years ago.

*It was **two years ago** that she last wrote to me.*

### II. EMPHATIC WHAT-CLAUSE

#### 1. Oxford Guide to English Grammar §51.4

***What** you need is a personal organizer.*

***What** the guests did after tea was (to) play mini-golf.*

***What** happened after tea was (that) the guest played mini-golf.*

#### 2. More examples:

***What/All** I need is a roof over my head and a decent meal.*

***What/All** Oliver Twist wanted was (to) ask for more.*



**III. EMPHATIC VERB** *Oxford Guide to English Grammar* §51.5

- I saw a ghost. → *I did see a ghost.*  
 They know it → They *do* know it.  
 She loves me → She *does* love me.  
 Sit down → *Do* sit down.

**IV. INVERSION** (Xem Bài 2 *Inversion* trang 16)**PRACTICE**

1. *The boss* phoned me yesterday. → It .....
  2. *The snow* made Christmas special for us that year. → It .....
  3. She heard the news *from John*. → It .....
  4. *I* took Sally to the party on Saturday. → It .....
  5. *Poisonous mushrooms* caused his death. → It .....
  6. We need *quality*, not quantity. → It .....
  7. *The Americans* landed on the Moon, not the Russians. → It .....
  8. We now need *a new sense of responsibility*.  
→ It ..... ; → What .....
  9. I just ask for *group solidarity*. → All .....
  10. *Two persistent journalists* uncovered the scandal. → It .....
  11. He takes after *his mother* rather than his father. → It .....
  12. The trouble started *when the police arrived*. → It .....
  13. He doesn't pass his exams *because he doesn't work hard enough*. → It .....
  14. I telephoned you *in order to warn you about what was happening*. → It .....
  15. I love you with all my heart. → I .....
  16. We now need *actions* rather than words.  
→ It ..... ; → What .....
  17. I enjoyed *the brilliant music* most of all in the Ballet Frankfurt performance.  
→ It ..... ; → What .....
  18. I'd like to talk to you about *your attitude*.  
→ It ..... ; → What .....
  19. He *knows* about our secret. → He .....
  20. We just need *five minutes* to fix it. → All .....
  21. Jack *bought* a new ring for his wife.
  22. Nick was late *because of the traffic jam*. → It .....
  23. I saw with my own eyes a clock made of a child's skeleton. → I .....
  24. *Write down* what you plan to do. → .....
  25. *Cheap rented accommodation* is now desperately needed in London and other large cities. → It .....
  26. I was astonished by *her confidence*. → What astonished me .....
- (Câu 27b và 28b có **inversion**):
27. I didn't realize the value of education *until after I left school*.  
→ a) It ..... ; → b) Not until .....
  28. You learn a foreign language *only by constant practice*.  
→ a) It ..... ; → b) Only by constant practice .....



# Bài 29

## LINKING VERBS

	LINKING VERBS (+ ADJECTIVE)	ACTION VERBS (+ ADVERB)
1	<b>be</b> thì, là <i>She is happy.</i>	
2	<b>look</b> (trông) có vẻ <i>He looks happy among his children.</i>	<b>look (at)</b> nhìn <i>He looked carefully at the pictures.</i>
3	<b>seem</b> (trông) có vẻ, dường như <i>She seems nervous today.</i>	
4	<b>appear</b> (trông) có vẻ <i>He appears younger than his wife.</i>	<b>appear</b> xuất hiện <i>Before I could leave, he appeared.</i>
5	<b>sound</b> nghe có vẻ <i>Her voice sounds strange today.</i>	<b>sound</b> vang lên hoặc làm cho vật gì vang lên. <i>The church bell sounded invitingly.</i> <i>The principal sounded the bell.</i>
6	<b>become</b> trở nên <i>He became rich. (+ adjective)</i> <i>He became a millionaire. (+ noun)</i>	
7	<b>grow</b> trở nên <i>Kelly grows tired after a workday.</i>	<b>grow</b> trồng <i>Kelly grows sunflowers in her yard.</i>
8	<b>turn</b> trở nên <i>Leaves (lá cây) turn red, orange, and yellow in the fall.</i>	<b>turn</b> xoay, quẹo, vặn, lật (trang) <i>The police officer turned the key slowly.</i>
9	<b>get</b> trở nên <i>He got angry about my lateness.</i>	<b>get</b> đến, lấy, nhận... <i>The police got there immediately.</i>
10	<b>smell</b> có mùi <i>Some flowers smell sweet.</i>	<b>smell</b> ngửi <i>She smelled the flowers joyfully.</i>
11	<b>taste</b> có vị <i>The food tastes delicious.</i>	<b>taste</b> nếm <i>She tasted the soup carefully.</i>
12	<b>feel</b> cảm thấy <i>He felt sad after the failure.</i>	<b>feel</b> nắn, dò dẫm <i>She felt the wall for a light switch.</i>
13	<b>remain</b> vẫn còn, vẫn tiếp tục <i>He remained silent. (+ adjective)</i> <i>Population growth remains a serious problem. (+ noun)</i>	<b>remain</b> ở lại, còn tồn tại <i>Nothing remained after the flood.</i>
14	<b>stay</b> vẫn còn, vẫn tiếp tục <i>The shops stay open until 9:30.</i>	<b>stay</b> ở lại, lưu lại <i>They stayed there patiently.</i>



## EXERCISE

## I) Choose the correct answer

- |  |                                       |                                      |
|--|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. She <b>looked</b> into the street.                | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 2. He <b>is</b> the best soccer player in the world. | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 3. She <b>was</b> great in her new performance.      | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 4. He <b>seems</b> confused.                         | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 5. They <b>tasted</b> the pizza.                     | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 6. The pizza <b>tasted</b> good.                     | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 7. That <b>sounds</b> fantastic.                     | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 8. The bugle <b>sounds</b> loudly.                   | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 9. He <b>grew</b> tired of running.                  | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 10. The fruit on the counter <b>looked</b> fresh.    | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 11. The dog suddenly <b>turned</b> friendly.         | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 12. Your perfume <b>smells</b> too strong today.     | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 13. Grandmother <b>tasted</b> our fresh bread.       | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 14. Betsy <b>appeared</b> troubled at her interview. | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 15. We <b>grew</b> two varieties of tomatoes.        | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 16. Your stereo speakers <b>sound</b> sensational.   | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 17. The bright day suddenly <b>turned</b> cloudy.    | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 18. She always <b>remains</b> calm under pressure.   | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 19. The choir <b>sounds</b> beautiful tonight.       | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |
| 20. Sally <b>became</b> bored and restless.          | <input type="checkbox"/> linking verb | <input type="checkbox"/> action verb |

## II) Choose the correct answer

- Jack appeared (*certain, certainly*) to be offered the job at the bank.
- You appear so (*happy, happily*) that something great must have happened.
- We have become (*total, totally*) dependent on computer technology.
- The answer sounded (*correct, correctly*).
- These cakes smell (*nice, nicely*).
- These cakes smell (*incredible, incredibly*) delicious.
- Mother (*gentle, gently*) felt my forehead to see if I had a fever.
- Suddenly the valley became (*dark, darkly*) and misty.
- The ghost appeared (*clear, clearly*) in the doorway.
- The leftover food from the picnic smelled (*rotten, rottenly*).
- Tom sounded (*angry, angrily*) when he spoke to me.
- Under the heavy blanket I stayed (*warm, warmly*) all night.
- The apple pie smells (*good, well*).
- The musician sounded his trumpet (*loud, loudly*).
- Bill looks (*tired, tiredly*) after the funeral.
- Have you played the game of smelling several substances (*careful, carefully*) and then identifying them?
- The peach ice cream tasted (*good, well*) on that hot night.



18. The little girl looked (*cautious, cautiously*) to the right and left.
19. Bob has a hot temper, but he never remains (*angry, angrily*) very long.
20. Karen tasted the hot chili (*careful, carefully*).
21. I've learned to identify fabrics blindfolded by feeling them (*careful, carefully*).
22. The children seem (*restless, restlessly*) today.
23. Ann seems (*anxious, anxiously*) about her grade on the test.
24. After reading by the fire, Ken became very (*sleepy, sleepily*).
25. The robbery suspect looked (*uneasy, uneasily*) at the judges.
26. Elise looked (*beautiful, beautifully*) as she entered the stage.
27. He turned the key (*quick, quickly*) and opened the door.
28. She felt (*optimistic, optimistically*) about her new job.
29. Air fresheners make your bathroom smell (*sweet, sweetly*).
30. Pat looked (*suspicious, suspiciously*) at the strange box on the shelf.

## Bài 30

# CLAUSES OF CONCESSION

---

### I) THOUGH / ALTHOUGH / DESPITE / IN SPITE OF

(Chương trình lớp 10 và 11 – Xem Bài 23, trang 98)

### II) ALTHOUGH HE IS YOUNG = YOUNG AS / THOUGH HE IS

- 1) Although he is young, he is knowledgeable.

(Tuy anh ấy còn trẻ, nhưng rất uyên bác)

= Young as he is, he is knowledgeable.

= Young though he is, he is knowledgeable.

- 2) \_\_\_\_\_, he felt so unhappy and lonely. (Đề thi ĐH Khối D - 2007)

A. Despite of his wealth

B. Rich as was he

C. Rich as he was

D. Despite he was so rich

### III) DESPITE / IN SPITE OF = FOR ALL / WITH ALL

Despite of his cleverness, he was not successful in life.

= For all his cleverness, he was not successful in life.

= With all his cleverness, he was not successful in life.

### IV) BUT / HOWEVER = ALL THE SAME

He was clever but he was not successful in life.

= He was clever; all the same, he was not successful in life.

### V) NO MATTER HOW... = HOWEVER

NO MATTER WHAT... = WHATEVER

NO MATTER WHERE... = WHEREVER



- 1) No matter where he has gone, I'll find him.  
(Cho dù hắn đi đâu, tôi cũng sẽ tìm được hắn).  
= Wherever he has gone, I'll find him.
- 2) No matter how hard Fred tried to lose weight, he did not succeed. (Đề thi ĐH Khối A1 - 2012)  
A. Fred tried very hard to lose weight and succeeded.  
B. It was hard for Fred to lose weight because he never succeeded.  
C. However hard Fred tried, he could not lose weight.  
D. It did not matter whether Fred could lose weight.
- 3) I won't change my mind \_\_\_\_\_ what you say. (Khối D - 2009)  
A. whether      B. no matter      C. because      D. although
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_, the results couldn't be better. (ĐH-CĐ 2006)  
A. No matter what he tried hard  
B. No matter how hard he tried  
C. Although very hard he tried  
D. Despite how hard he tried  
**GHI CHÚ:** No matter how hard he tried... = However hard he tried...
- 5) \_\_\_\_\_ you treat him, he'll help you. He's so tolerant." (Khối D - 2011)  
A. As if      B. No matter how  
C. Even though      D. In addition to
- 6) \_\_\_\_\_, she continued to carry out her duties. (Khối D - 2014)  
A. Although in poor health      B. Although she is in good health  
C. Despite her good health      D. No matter how poor her health

## VI) REGARDLESS OF... = NO MATTER

- 1) No matter how much money he spends on his clothes he never looks well dressed. (Cho dù anh ta tiêu nhiều tiền vào quần áo / Bất kể anh ta tiêu bao nhiêu tiền vào quần áo, anh ta chẳng bao giờ có vẻ là ăn mặc đẹp).  
= Regardless of how much money he spends on his clothes he never looks well dressed.
- 2) I'm going to find my dog no matter how long it may take.  
= I'm going to find my dog regardless of how long it may take.

## VII) ALTHOUGH I TRIED HARD... = TRY AS I MIGHT ALTHOUGH I TRY HARD... = TRY AS I MAY

- 1) Although I tried hard, I couldn't work out the answer.  
- Try as I might, I couldn't work out the answer.
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_ I might, I couldn't open the door. (Khối D - 2010)  
A. However hard      B. As try      C. Try as      D. No matter
- 3) Although she tries hard, she cannot comment on this.  
= Try as she may, she cannot comment on this.



= Try as she does, she cannot comment on this.

= Try though she does, she cannot comment on this.

### VIII) MUCH AS... = ALTHOUGH

- 1) Although she needed the job (very much), she had to refuse.  
(Tuy rất cần công ăn việc làm này, nàng vẫn buộc lòng phải từ chối)  
= Much as she needed the job, she had to refuse.
- 2) Although I admire his courage, I cannot think he acted wisely.  
= Much as I admire his courage, I cannot think he acted wisely.

### EXERCISE

1. \_\_\_\_\_ I suggest, he always disagrees.  
A. what                      B. whatever                      C. how                      D. however
2. \_\_\_\_\_ I love you, I can't let you do whatever you like.  
A. Whatever                      B. Whether                      C. Despite                      D. Much as
3. \_\_\_\_\_ hungry I am, I never seem to be able to finish off a whole pizza.  
A. Although                      B. However                      C. Besides                      D. Moreover
4. Try \_\_\_\_\_, I couldn't reach the shelf.  
A. hard, though                      B. my best                      C. as I might                      D. however hard
5. I can't come and spend the weekend with you, \_\_\_\_\_ I would like to.  
A. in case                      B. much as                      C. in spite of                      D. as if
6. \_\_\_\_\_ the wet weather, the football match went ahead.  
A. Regardless of                      B. No matter what                      C. Much as                      D. However
7. \_\_\_\_\_ I hate getting up at six, I have to.  
A. Much as                      B. As much                      C. So much as                      D. So much
8. \_\_\_\_\_ I admire David as a poet, I do not like him as a man.  
A. If only                      B. Much as                      C. Only if                      D. As much

### TRANSFORMATION

1. Although he is good, he isn't as talented as my brother. → Good .....
2. Although Mary is talented, she is not yet ready to turn professional.
3. Although it may seem strange, he hasn't had a holiday for years.
4. Although they are rich, they are not generous (quảng đại) with their money.
5. Although things are bad, we mustn't give up hope.
6. Although it is late, we'll stay a little longer.
7. Although John was exhausted, he managed to complete the whole course.
8. Although this man was poor, he was always neatly dressed.
9. Although the exam was difficult, he passed it easily.
10. Although we were tired, we managed to make it to the top of the hill.
11. However old he is, she will marry him. → No .....
12. No matter how much he drank, he was up for work at six the next morning.  
→ However .....
13. Although he was disapproved, he continued speaking. → Regardless .....



14. Although she was young, she had a good fortune. → Young .....
15. Good tidings to you, wherever you are. → Good tidings to you, no.....
16. No matter who you are, I'm not afraid of you. → Whoever .....
17. You can use this knife as long as you like, and it won't wear out.  
→ No ..... ; → However .....
18. However hard they tried, they weren't able to overtake the leader.  
→ Try ..... ; → No .....
19. Whatever she said, no one pay any attention. → No .....
20. Although I trust your judgement, this time I think I'll do it my way.  
→ Much .....
21. Although she was sick, she did not stay in bed. → Sick though.....
22. It does not matter how much money you give him, he will not accept.  
→ However .....
23. We're going to be late, no matter which way we go. (Use "whichever")
24. I'll visit Japan, whatever it costs / however much it costs. (Use "no matter")
25. Despite my admiration for him, I recognise that he is a bit selfish. → Much....
26. Although he has many faults, people in the office still like him.  
→ Despite ..... ; → In spite .....;  
→ For ..... ; → With .....
27. Everyone is worried about the scandal; but, in spite of all its implications, I think it'll do us some good. (Use "for all")
28. Although she is pretty, she is not popular with men. (Use "all the same")
29. OK, I'll do the washing up, even though I detest it! (Use "much as")
30. However much she practised, she just couldn't get the hang of it. → No .....
31. However many times you ask me, the answer will still be no!  
→ It doesn't matter .....

## Bài 31

# NOUN CLAUSES

Cf. Longman English Grammar 1.23 – 1.24

### I. Noun clause từ Statement:

#### 1) Noun clause làm Subject:

**Statement:** Money doesn't grow on trees. This is obvious.

That money doesn't grow on trees is obvious.

The fact that money doesn't grow on trees is obvious.

Biến cách: It is obvious that money doesn't grow on trees.

#### 2) Noun clause làm Object:

**Statement:** Money doesn't grow on trees. Everybody knows this.

Everybody knows that money doesn't grow on trees.



3) Noun clause làm Complement sau Be:

*The truth is that money doesn't grow on trees.*

*The trouble is that all the shops are shut.*

4) Noun clause sau Adjective diễn tả tâm trạng (như *afraid, glad, happy, pleased, sorry*):

*I'm afraid that we've sold out of tickets.*

*I'm happy that you joined us.*

**II. Noun clause từ Yes-no question:**

1) Noun clause làm Subject:

**Yes-no question:** *Has he signed the contract? It doesn't matter.*

*Whether he has signed the contract (or not) doesn't matter.*

2) Noun clause làm Object sau Verb:

*I want to know whether/if he has signed the contract (or not).*

3) Noun clause làm Object sau Preposition:

*I'm concerned about whether he has signed the contract (or not).*

4) Noun clause làm Complement sau Be:

*The question is whether he has signed the contract.*

**III. Noun clause từ Wh-question:**

1) Noun clause làm Subject:

**Wh- question:** *When did he leave? It is a mystery.*

*When he left is a mystery.*

2) Noun clause làm Object sau Verb:

*I want to know when he left.*

3) Noun clause làm Object sau Preposition:

*I'm interested in when he left.*

4) Noun clause làm Complement sau Be:

*The question is when he left.*

**PRACTICE**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ disabled children cannot enjoy toys designed for non-disabled youngsters is the subject of the report.  
A. What                      B. Those                      C. That                      D. Because
2. \_\_\_\_\_ was flat was believed by most people in the fifteenth century.  
A. The earth      B. That the earth      C. As the earth      D. Whether the earth
3. \_\_\_\_\_ has worsened so quickly surprised the doctor.  
A. Which the patient's condition                      B. The patient's condition  
C. That the patient's condition                      D. As the patient's condition
4. Many scientists have shown \_\_\_\_\_ can be used for ever-increasing number of tasks.  
A. that lasers how      B. lasers how      C. how lasers      D. that what lasers
5. I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ she will be admitted to the university.  
A. whether                      B. what                      C. which                      D. who
6. \_\_\_\_\_ was a great relief that everyone got back safely.  
A. It                      B. That                      C. What                      D. If



7. \_\_\_\_\_ he could be mistaken didn't seem possible.  
A. Whether      B. That      C. How      D. If
8. You can denied \_\_\_\_\_ you received the message.  
A. if      B. it      C. the fact that      D. the fact which
9. I am not convinced \_\_\_\_\_ his research is conclusive.  
A. what      B. the fact      C. that      D. whatever
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Ellen has been caught lying on several occasions suggests that she cannot be trusted.  
A. The fact which      B. The fact that      C. Which      D. What
11. You can choose \_\_\_\_\_ dessert you like.  
A. whenever      B. whoever      C. whichever      D. however
12. \_\_\_\_\_ I'd like to talk about in this presentation is how to manage your time effectively.  
A. Whatever      B. What      C. That      D. Whichever
13. Somebody forgot this bag. I wonder \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. whose is this bag      B. whose bag is  
C. whose bag this is      D. is this whose bag
14. Marvin can't decide \_\_\_\_\_ to apply to Harvard or Princeton.  
A. whether      B. which      C. where      D. whatever
15. Tell me \_\_\_\_\_ day is better for you - Saturday or Sunday?  
A. when      B. that      C. whether      D. which
16. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. what time is it      B. what time it is      C. that time is it      D. that time it is
17. The belief \_\_\_\_\_ people should marry for love is not universal.  
A. which      B. for      C. what      D. that
18. I have no idea \_\_\_\_\_ this bus goes to Los Angeles.  
A. where      B. wherever      C. whether      D. which
19. It is uncertain \_\_\_\_\_ our neighbors will be able to sell their house.  
A. which      B. where      C. whether      D. what
20. \_\_\_\_\_ I have will be yours soon or later.  
A. No matter what      B. Whatever      C. Whether      D. That
21. These pictures show you \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. what does our village look like      B. what our village looks like  
C. how does our village look like      D. how our village looks like
22. \_\_\_\_\_ certain that his invention will lead to the development of production.  
A. It has      B. It is      C. That is      D. This is
23. Can you make sure \_\_\_\_\_ the gold necklace?  
A. where Alice had put      B. where did Alice put  
C. where has Alice put      D. where Alice has put
25. \_\_\_\_\_ I accept award or refuse it is none of your business.  
A. If      B. When      C. Whether      D. Even though
26. The trouble is \_\_\_\_\_ we're short of hands.  
A. how      B. that      C. what      D. which



27. \_\_\_\_\_ nothing to do with us.  
 A. What did she have  
 B. What she did is  
 C. What did she do has  
 D. What she has done has
28. (Đề thi ĐH Khối D, 2014) They got lost in the forest, and \_\_\_\_\_ made matters worse was that night began to fall.  
 A. that  
 B. what  
 C. which  
 D. it
29. (Cao Đăng Khối D và A1, 2014) Researchers are making enormous progress in understanding \_\_\_\_\_ and what causes it.  
 A. a tsunami is what  
 B. what a tsunami is  
 C. is what a tsunami  
 D. what is a tsunami
30. (ĐH Khối D, 2013) We expressed \_\_\_\_\_ the missing child would be found alive.  
 A. the hope for  
 B. the hope which  
 C. as we hoped  
 D. the hope that
31. (ĐH Khối D, 2012) He didn't know \_\_\_\_\_ or stay until the end of the festival.  
 A. if to go  
 B. if that he should go  
 C. to go  
 D. whether to go
32. (ĐH Khối D, 2010) \_\_\_\_\_ Serbia defeated Germany surprised everyone.  
 A. Whether  
 B. When  
 C. Because  
 D. That

## TRANSFORMATION

1. She married Joe. This surprised everybody. → (The fact) that .....
2. Plants need water in order to grow. This is true. → It .....
3. How did I spend my money? It is none of your business. → How .....
4. He confessed his love of my sister. → He confessed .....
5. How it happened is still a mystery. → It .....
6. If she leaves early, the problem will certainly be solved. → The solution is .....
7. Is there life on Mars? Many people have wondered. → Many people .....
8. The duration of my stay is doubtful. → How long I .....
9. What's your name? Please let me know. → Please let me know .....
10. My success does not make me happy. → That I .....
11. The saint predicted the King's death. → The saint predicted that .....
12. I convinced him of my innocence. → I convinced him that .....
13. He asked her the reason of weeping. → He asked her why .....
14. Let me know what you formally think of it. → Let me know your .....
15. If you do not hurry up you will miss the bus. → Hurry up or .....
16. I don't understand his words. → I don't understand what .....
17. The consequence of his carelessness was the loss of the game.  
 → The consequence of his carelessness was that .....
18. I don't know her address. → I don't know where .....
19. They declared their intention of starting a new business. → They .....
20. Is he innocent? I don't know. → I don't know .....
21. The director announced his intention to retire. → The director .....
22. The patient needs to be given another treatment. I suggest. → I suggest .....
23. Pollution will continue to plague our planet. This is clear.
24. He worked hard for the whole school year. This pleased his parents.



25. How do people govern themselves? Political scientists study this.  
 26. Where did the dinosaurs lay their eggs. The book is about this.  
 27. A spider has eight legs. Most people know this.  
 28. Does the sun have a solid surface? I don't know this.

## Bài 32

# QUANTIFIERS

	with countable noun	with uncountable noun
nhiều	many a large number of a great number of several quite a few	much a great deal of a large amount of
	a lot of, lots of, plenty of	
nhiều hơn	more	
nhiều nhất	most	
ít	few	little
ít hơn	fewer	less
ít nhất	fewest	least
vài / chút	a few a couple of	a little
	some	
bất cứ	any	
tất cả	all	
không	no, none, not any	

### Ghi chú thêm

#### 1. *number*

<b>a number of</b>	<b>+ plural noun</b>	<b>+ plural verb</b>	<b>= một số</b>
<i>A number of students are late today.</i>			

<b>the number of</b>	<b>+ plural noun</b>	<b>+ singular verb</b>	<b>= số</b>
<i>The number of students in this room right now is twenty.</i>			

2. Phải thêm *of* cho từ ngữ chỉ số lượng nếu danh từ theo sau được xác định:
- my, your, his, her, John's... (*some of my friends; most of Mary's books*)
  - this, that, these, those (*half of this money; one of these men*)
  - the (*many of the workers; most of the houses*)



3. Được tùy ý thêm *of* cho *all* và *both* nếu danh từ theo sau được xác định.  
*all (of) the students; both (of) my sisters*  
(Xem Betty S. Azar, *Understanding and Using English Grammar* 7.11-12)
4. *one... another*: một người/một vật... một người khác/một vật khác
5. *one... the other*: người này/vật này... người kia/vật kia (2 đối tượng)
6. *one... the others*: một người/một vật...những người kia/những vật kia (nhiều đối tượng)
7. *some... others*: một số... số khác
8. *another*: một người khác, một vật khác
9. *others*: những người khác, những vật khác
10. *the other day*: hôm nọ, bữa nọ
11. *another ten days*: thêm mười ngày nữa
12. *every four years*: bốn năm một lần; *every ten days*: mười ngày một lần
13. *every other day*: cách nhật; *every other line*: cách dòng
14. *many a time = many times*
15. *mostly*: chủ yếu ; *almost*: hầu như (nearly) ; *most / almost all*: hầu hết
16. *some persons*: vài người; *some person*: một người nào đó
17. *one hundred students, two hundred students, one thousand students, three thousand students*: 100 học sinh, 200 học sinh, 1000 học sinh, 3000 học sinh
18. *hundreds of students, thousands of students*: hàng trăm học sinh, hàng ngàn học sinh
19. *advice, furniture, news, equipment, information, luggage* là các danh từ không đếm được. Có thể chuyển chúng thành đếm được bằng cách thêm từ *piece*: *a piece of advice; two pieces of advice; many pieces of furniture; three pieces of news; four pieces of equipment; some pieces of information; five pieces of luggage*

## EXERCISE

1. There are so \_\_\_\_\_ in the sky that we cannot count them.  
A. much star      B. little stars      C. many stars      D. few star
2. There is so \_\_\_\_\_ smoke in the air. Then it is healthy to live in this village.  
A. many      B. much      C. few      D. little
3. I like to listen to \_\_\_\_\_ songs after dinner before I begin studying.  
A. few      B. a few      C. little      D. a little
4. Can you come to our house this evening? I have so \_\_\_\_\_ friends here and I always feel lonely.  
A. many      B. little      C. few      D. a little
5. This is not the first time you have this mistake. It has happened \_\_\_\_\_ before.  
A. many times      B. much time      C. little time      D. a little time
6. We took very \_\_\_\_\_ photographs when we were on holiday because it rained most of the time.  
A. many      B. much      C. few      D. a little



7. I want \_\_\_\_\_ money to buy some books.  
A. little                      B. a little                      C. few                      D. a few
8. He is very quick-tempered. He has \_\_\_\_\_ patience for children's noise.  
A. much                      B. many                      C. little                      D. a few
9. The homework is not very easy. You may need \_\_\_\_\_ help.  
A. any                      B. some                      C. a great deal                      D. a large number
10. You don't need many friends. What you need is \_\_\_\_\_ good ones.  
A. much                      B. few                      C. a few                      D. a lot
11. \_\_\_\_\_ customers have come into the shop. It has been fairly busy.  
A. Many                      B. Few                      C. Much                      D. Little
12. Very \_\_\_\_\_ people were flying because of the bad weather.  
A. much                      B. many                      C. a few                      D. few
13. Luckily \_\_\_\_\_ of the examination questions are difficult.  
A. some                      B. many                      C. few                      D. little
14. The chocolates were so delicious that \_\_\_\_\_ of them were left.  
A. many                      B. much                      C. few                      D. little
15. He's very careless; he pays \_\_\_\_\_ attention to his health.  
A. little                      B. a little                      C. a few                      D. a lot
16. The number of students entering this university \_\_\_\_\_ over the last few years.  
A. have raised                      B. has raised                      C. have risen                      D. has risen
17. You only need to use a small \_\_\_\_\_ of salt in a dish like this.  
A. number                      B. amount                      C. deal                      D. lot
18. A number of old people \_\_\_\_\_ because of poverty and illness.  
A. is disappointed                      B. are disappointed  
C. is disappointing                      D. are disappointing
19. They were bringing in \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. so many furnitures                      B. too much furniture  
C. a lot of furnitures                      D. most the furniture
20. All the cake \_\_\_\_\_ eaten.  
A. has been                      B. have been                      C. were                      D. are
21. Tom and Mike were badly injured in the last match, so \_\_\_\_\_ can play today.  
A. neither of them                      B. either one of them  
C. both of them                      D. not any of them
22. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ tea?  
A. few                      B. a few                      C. little                      D. a little
23. \_\_\_\_\_ soldiers were killed in action.  
A. A large quantity of                      B. A large number of  
C. A great deal of                      D. A large amount of
24. John got good marks because he had made \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes in his essay.  
A. many                      B. much                      C. little                      D. few
25. We have interviewed with twenty candidates for the vacant position, but \_\_\_\_\_ of them was actually a good fit.  
A. most                      B. neither                      C. much                      D. none



26. \_\_\_\_\_ her friends died in battle.  
A. Almost      B. Most      C. Most of      D. Many
27. Would you like to have \_\_\_\_\_ coffee?  
A. some      B. little      C. few      D. many
28. \_\_\_\_\_ the students in my class enjoy taking part in social activities.  
A. Most of      B. Most      C. Many      D. The number of
29. He's always busy. He has \_\_\_\_\_ time to relax. (Đề thi TNPT 2005)  
A. much      B. little      C. a little      D. plenty of
30. We need more sugar. There is \_\_\_\_\_ sugar in the pot. (Đề thi TNPT 2006)  
A. much      B. many      C. any      D. little
31. "Would you like to have \_\_\_\_\_ coffee?" (Đề thi TNPT 2008)  
A. many      B. few      C. some      D. little
32. Katie has read \_\_\_\_\_ French books. (Đề thi TNPT 2011 - Hệ 3 năm)  
A. a little      B. every      C. a few      D. much
33. Since the company is losing a lot this year, it plans to hire \_\_\_\_\_ workers.  
A. lesser      B. fewer      C. less      D. few
34. \_\_\_\_\_ people were injured in the accident.  
A. Much      B. A great deal of      C. Less      D. Several
35. They provided only a small \_\_\_\_\_ of information  
A. number      B. deal      C. amount      D. sum
36. There is \_\_\_\_\_ butter left. We need to buy \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. few - any      B. little - some      C. much - many      D. few - some
37. \_\_\_\_\_ Peter \_\_\_\_\_ Michael come here quite often but \_\_\_\_\_ of them gives us help.  
A. Both - and - either      B. Neither - nor - both  
C. Both - and - neither      D. Either - or - all
38. Not all of the children went outside. \_\_\_\_\_ of them stayed in the classroom.  
A. Some      B. All      C. Both      D. None
39. There wouldn't be so many accidents if there was \_\_\_\_\_ traffic on the roads.  
A. less      B. fewer      C. a lot of      D. some
40. We got to the hotel with few \_\_\_\_\_ and went to bed early.  
A. luggage      B. difficulty      C. trouble      D. problems

### ADVANCED

1. \_\_\_\_\_ good books are available in this shop.  
A. A great deal of      B. A number of      C. The number of      D. Lot of
2. All of us are hoping for good news.  
A. Us all      B. All of we      C. We in all      D. We all
3. I have \_\_\_\_\_ books on science. Do you want to buy some?  
A. quite a few      B. a few quite      C. quite few      D. none is correct
4. I was in San Francisco just \_\_\_\_\_ day.  
A. another      B. the other      C. other      D. some
5. Marsha visits her son \_\_\_\_\_ every day.  
A. most      B. almost      C. mostly      D. most of



6. \_\_\_\_\_ luggage is now on board.  
A. Most                      B. Most of                      C. Almost                      D. Many
7. If a man does not have respect for himself, he cannot expect \_\_\_\_\_ to respect him.  
A. another                      B. the other                      C. others                      D. the others
8. The number of students who applied for the scholarship \_\_\_\_\_ three.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. was                      D. were
9. Two tons of rice \_\_\_\_\_ too heavy for him to carry.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. be                      D. were
10. It took \_\_\_\_\_ time and effort.  
A. a great deal of                      B. plenty of                      C. lots of                      D. all are correct
11. I could speak \_\_\_\_\_ words of Swedish, but I wasn't very fluent.  
A. a few                      B. few                      C. little                      D. a little
12. There isn't much wine left, only \_\_\_\_\_ cups. We should buy some more.  
A. a couple of                      B. a few of                      C. a little                      D. a great deal of
13. Two-thirds of my income \_\_\_\_\_ on food and accommodation.  
A. spends                      B. are spent                      C. have been spent                      D. is spent
14. Lee contributed 50 dollars, but he wishes he could contribute \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. one other 50 dollars                      B. the same amount also  
C. another 50 dollars                      D. more 50 dollars
15. How high is that mountain?  
A. 500 meters in high                      B. 500-meter high  
C. 500 meters in height                      D. 500 meters in high
16. After the new technique had been introduced, the factory produced \_\_\_\_\_ cars in 2014 as the year before. (Đề thi TNPT Quốc gia 2015)  
A. as many twice                      B. twice as many  
C. as twice many                      D. twice many as
17. I've sat in that chair \_\_\_\_\_ a time and thought about poor Joseph.  
A. many                      B. much                      C. more                      D. most
18. We've had \_\_\_\_\_ complaints about the new phone system.  
A. a fair number of                      B. a great deal of  
C. the number of                      D. almost every
19. Every morning \_\_\_\_\_ go jogging in this park.  
A. about two hundreds of people                      B. hundreds of people  
C. about two hundreds people                      D. hundred people
20. \_\_\_\_\_ people like coffee with their breakfasts. Others prefer tea.  
A. A few                      B. Some                      C. Most                      D. Few
21. \_\_\_\_\_ guests have already arrived. All of the others will arrive soon.  
A. Most                      B. Most the                      C. Most of                      D. Most of the
22. Some books are easy to read, while \_\_\_\_\_ are quite difficult.  
A. another                      B. the others                      C. others                      D. the other
23. There is \_\_\_\_\_ patterns to choose from.  
A. a variety of                      B. a pack of                      C. a large sum                      D. a collection of



24. I have \_\_\_\_\_ for you about the holiday.  
A. two advices                      B. two advice  
C. two pieces of advice          D. two of advices
25. The area offers \_\_\_\_\_ activities for the tourists.  
A. a sum of        B. a big deal of    C. a hundred of    D. a wide range of
26. \_\_\_\_\_ the animals in this zoo look sad.  
A. Most            B. All              C. Many            D. Some
27. Everyone should have a check up with the dentist \_\_\_\_\_ six months.  
A. another        B. each            C. every             D. all
28. \_\_\_\_\_ students were absent yesterday; in fact, more than half of them were not there.  
A. A few            B. Some            C. All of the        D. Quite a few
29. \_\_\_\_\_ my brothers live near me, but neither of them visits me very often.  
A. All              B. Most of        C. None of          D. Both
30. There are ten pieces of fruit in my basket. One is an orange, one is a lemon and \_\_\_\_\_ is an apple.  
A. others            B. the other        C. another           D. the others
31. I have two pencils. One is black, and \_\_\_\_\_ is blue.  
A. another        B. the others        C. others            D. the other
32. You should take these pills every \_\_\_\_\_ day.  
A. other            B. another          C. the other        D. the others
33. Both of the \_\_\_\_\_ you suggest will improve the situation. We must discuss it all further.  
A. proposals        B. solution          C. help              D. advice
34. Some \_\_\_\_\_ at the door is asking to see you.  
A. men              B. people            C. man              D. of my friends

**Y**our parents might be not be as up to date as you, but they may give you good timeless advice. They are in the real world, not the "surreal teen world". They used to be teenagers just like you. You don't want to know what they did in high school, but they had actually learned from their mistakes which makes them the stodgy parents you have today. Just wait, you'll become the stodgy parent too when you have your own kids. Có lẽ bố mẹ bạn không hợp thời như bạn, nhưng bố mẹ có thể cho bạn lời khuyên tốt đẹp vượt thời gian. Bố mẹ sống trong thế giới thật, không phải "thế giới tuổi mộng mơ". Bố mẹ đã từng trải qua thời niên thiếu như bạn. Bạn chẳng quan tâm tìm hiểu xem bố mẹ đã làm những gì thời trung học, nhưng chắc chắn họ đã học hỏi được từ những sai lầm của mình để rồi trở thành bố mẹ cổ hủ của bạn hiện nay. Cứ đợi đấy, rồi đây chính bạn cũng sẽ trở thành người bố hay người mẹ cổ hủ khi bạn có con cái •



# Bài 33

## CONNECTORS

no matter	bất kể	otherwise, or (else)	nếu không như thế
regardless of	bất kể, bất chấp	meanwhile	trong khi đó
accordingly	do đó, vì thế	in the meantime	trong khi đó
consequently	do đó, vì thế	whereas	trong khi đó
therefore,	do đó, vì thế	similarly, likewise	tương tự, cũng
so	do đó, vì thế	anyway	dẫu thế, dẫu sao
thus	do đó, vì thế	all the same	dẫu thế, tuy vậy
while	trong khi	still	dẫu thế, tuy vậy
whereas	trong khi	on the contrary	trái lại
however	tuy nhiên	in contrast	trái lại
nevertheless	tuy nhiên	in contrast to	trái với
all the same	tuy vậy	on the other hand	trái lại, mặt khác
as long as	miễn là	In conclusion,	Để kết luận
provided (that)	miễn là	To sum up,	Tóm lại,
as though	như thể	To summarize,	Tóm lại,
as if	như thể	instead of	thay vì
since	vì	instead	thay vì thế
now that	vì	rather than	hơn là, thay vì
due to	vì, nhờ vào	Rather,	Đúng hơn,
owing to	vì, nhờ vào	in short	nói ngắn gọn
thanks to	vì, nhờ vào	on the whole	nói chung
indeed	thật vậy	by no means	không
in fact	thật vậy	As a result,	Kết quả là,
actually	thật vậy, thật ra	As a consequence,	Kết quả là,
unlike	khác với	Additionally,	Ngoài ra,
in other words,	nói cách khác	In addition,	Ngoài ra,
above all,	quan trọng nhất,	Moreover,	Ngoài ra,
shortly	sớm	Furthermore,	Ngoài ra,
Formerly,	Trước kia,	Besides,	Ngoài ra,
even if	cho dù, dẫu	besides	ngoài, ngoại trừ
For this purpose,	Vì mục đích này,	apart from	ngoài, ngoại trừ
In this respect,	Về mặt này,	other than	ngoài, ngoại trừ
Theoretically,	Về lý thuyết,	except (for), but	ngoại trừ, trừ ra
in view of	xét đến, nhìn vào	in addition to	ngoài, thêm vào
of course	dĩ nhiên	in addition to	ngoài
naturally	dĩ nhiên	as mentioned above	như đã nói trên
in general	nói chung	aforementioned	như đã nói trên
in particular	nói riêng	Anyway,	Dẫu sao,



As a matter of fact,	Thật vậy,
It is generally known that...	Mọi người biết rằng...
It is common knowledge that	Mọi người biết rằng...
To put it in another way,	Nói cách khác,
As far as I am concerned	Theo tôi, (= In my opinion)
As far as sth. is concerned	Xét về...
It goes without saying that	Hiển nhiên là...
It can be inferred that	Có thể suy ra rằng...
That is / That is to say	Nghĩa là...
Many people take it for granted that	Nhiều người cho là đương nhiên rằng..
Throughout the history (of mankind)	Suốt lịch sử (nhân loại)

• Đề thi TNPT 2010:

- Some fish can survive only in salt water, \_\_\_\_\_ others can live only in fresh water.  
A. whereas      B. even if      C. so that      D. since
- \_\_\_\_\_ the salary meets my expectations, I will accept the job offer.  
A. So      B. Therefore      C. If      D. Although
- The police ordered people to leave the building \_\_\_\_\_ a bomb threat.  
A. in case      B. because of      C. because      D. since
- \_\_\_\_\_, you aren't allowed to go sailing on this lake.  
A. Although be able to swim.      B. Unless you can swim  
C. If you weren't able to swim      D. Despite of your swimming

• Đề thi TNPT 2011:

- Sales were poor last month; \_\_\_\_\_, there has been an increase this month.  
A. otherwise      B. however      C. because      D. moreover
- \_\_\_\_\_ his serious disease, he tried to finish writing his novel.  
A. Despite      B. However      C. Although      D. In spite

• Đề thi TNPT 2012:

- I like reading books \_\_\_\_\_ this is a good way to get information.  
A. in order to      B. so that      C. because      D. because of
- We couldn't go camping \_\_\_\_\_ it rained heavily. (Hệ 3 năm)  
A. but      B. because      C. unless      D. so

• Đề thi TNPT 2013:

- Our flight from Bangkok to London was delayed \_\_\_\_\_ the storm.  
A. since      B. because of      C. in spite of      D. because

• Đề thi TNPT 2014:

- We will leave \_\_\_\_\_ the rain stops.  
A. until      B. during      C. as soon as      D. while

• Đề thi TNPT Quốc gia 2015:

- \_\_\_\_\_ the salesman promised to exchange the defective CD player for a new one, they insisted on getting a refund.  
A. Despite      B. Although      C. And      D. But



• 2014 ĐH Khối D:

12. Students are encouraged to develop critical thinking \_\_\_\_\_ accepting opinions without questioning them.  
A. in addition      B. for instance      C. instead of      D. because of
13. \_\_\_\_\_, she continued to carry out her duties.  
A. Although in poor health      B. Although she is in good health  
C. Despite her good health      D. No matter how poor her health
14. "Take a spare tyre \_\_\_\_\_ you have a puncture on the way to the beach."  
A. in case      B. if      C. so that      D. unless
15. \_\_\_\_\_ your encouragement, I wouldn't have made such a daring decision.  
A. Until      B. In spite      C. But for      D. Providing

• 2014 ĐH Khối A1:

16. \_\_\_\_\_ he got top marks at high school, he never went to university.  
A. Although      B. Despite      C. Meanwhile      D. Nevertheless
17. Sammy had worked in England for a year \_\_\_\_\_ moving to Scotland.  
A. while      B. once      C. until      D. before
18. In our team, no person \_\_\_\_\_ John could finish this tough task in such a short time.  
A. outside      B. other than      C. including      D. rather than

• 2014 Cao Đẳng:

19. "Don't eat so many sweets, \_\_\_\_\_ you'll have to visit the dentist often."  
A. otherwise      B. whether      C. when      D. while

• 2013 ĐH Khối D:

20. \_\_\_\_\_ his brother, Mike is active and friendly.  
A. Alike      B. Unlike      C. Dislike      D. Liking
21. \_\_\_\_\_ John Kennedy was elected president, he was the youngest American President ever.  
A. When      B. While      C. Before      D. As long as

• 2013 ĐH Khối A1:

22. You can use my car \_\_\_\_\_ you drive carefully.  
A. though      B. as though      C. as long as      D. lest
23. We decided to take a late flight \_\_\_\_\_ we could spend more time with our family.  
A. so as to      B. in order      C. so that      D. in order to
24. Scarcely had he stepped out of the room \_\_\_\_\_ he heard a loud laughter within.  
A. then      B. until      C. than      D. when

• 2012 ĐH Khối D:

25. You should look up the meaning of new words in the dictionary \_\_\_\_\_ misuse them.  
A. so that not to      B. so not to      C. so that not      D. so as not to
26. He didn't know \_\_\_\_\_ or stay until the end of the festival.  
A. if to go      B. if that he should go      C. to go      D. whether to go



27. \_\_\_\_\_ smoking is a causative factor of many diseases, there is no ban on tobacco advertising.  
 A. However      B. Therefore      C. Although      D. In spite of

### EXERCISE

1. Malaria, which can be fatal if left untreated, is transmitted by the female, \_\_\_\_\_ by the male mosquito.  
 A. not      B. however      C. despite      D. instead
2. \_\_\_\_\_ he had a bad cold, William still went to work.  
 A. Although      B. However      C. In spite of      D. Instead of
3. \_\_\_\_\_ he is in debt, he still lives luxuriously. (xa hoa)  
 A. Despite      B. Although      C. However      D. In spite of
4. \_\_\_\_\_ playing professional volleyball, Jim also enjoys tennis.  
 A. Besides      B. Moreover      C. Therefore      D. Among
5. \_\_\_\_\_ playing professional volleyball, Jim also enjoys tennis.  
 A. Beside      B. Addition      C. Not only      D. Apart from
6. The child smiles whenever the puppy appears.  
 A. whenever      B. however      C. whatever      D. wherever
7. \_\_\_\_\_ her bad leg, she couldn't walk so fast as the others.  
 A. Because      B. Because of      C. Although      D. Since
8. \_\_\_\_\_ his father died, his eldest brother has looked after him.  
 A. Because      B. Whenever      C. Since      D. Until
9. \_\_\_\_\_ you run fast, you are likely to miss the train.  
 A. When      B. Unless      C. Since      D. Because
10. \_\_\_\_\_ there was a fierce dog in the house, the thieves managed to break in.  
 A. Since      B. Because      C. As      D. Although
11. He continued loving his girlfriend \_\_\_\_\_ his family's protests.  
 A. owing to      B. because      C. in spite of      D. instead of
12. He was \_\_\_\_\_ a thief but also a murderer.  
 A. either      B. not only      C. neither      D. besides
13. There was nothing they could do \_\_\_\_\_ leave the car at the roadside where it had broken down.  
 A. than      B. unless      C. instead of      D. but
14. It's necessary for you to have \_\_\_\_\_ a passport and a visa.  
 A. both      B. as well as      C. either      D. each
15. \_\_\_\_\_ he gets to the airport, they'll check in his luggage.  
 A. Wherever      B. However      C. Although      D. As soon as
16. Mark is motivated to study \_\_\_\_\_ he knows that a good education can improve his life.  
 A. therefore      B. because of      C. because      D. so
17. \_\_\_\_\_ he has continued to work on his thesis.  
 A. Although all these problems      B. Even though all these problems  
 C. Despite all these problems      D. In spite of there are problems



18. \_\_\_\_\_ the weather is cold, Annie isn't wearing a coat.  
A. Because      B. Although      C. Moreover      D. Besides
19. \_\_\_\_\_ I moved in my apartment, my neighbours have visited me twice.  
A. Because      B. Since      C. When      D. After
20. \_\_\_\_\_ all these evidence, the man denied stealing the motorbike.  
A. As a result of      B. Even if      C. Due to      D. Despite
21. My brother is taking extra classes in English \_\_\_\_\_ become a tourist guide.  
A. so that      B. so as      C. in order that      D. so as to
22. Find out \_\_\_\_\_ they are going this morning \_\_\_\_\_ ask if we may join them.  
A. where - and      B. either - or      C. neither - nor      D. not only - but also
23. Your son wants to study in the USA. \_\_\_\_\_ I think you should let him go.  
A. Therefore      B. But      C. And      D. However
24. My sister didn't get the job \_\_\_\_\_ she had all the necessary qualifications.  
A. therefore      B. although      C. however      D. in spite of
25. He had to act immediately; \_\_\_\_\_ it would have been too late.  
A. nevertheless      B. still      C. otherwise      D. consequently
26. \_\_\_\_\_ he nor I can play the guitar.  
A. Either      B. Not only      C. Neither      D. Besides
27. Hire him because he is young and smart. \_\_\_\_\_, he is funny!  
A. Nevertheless      B. Otherwise      C. However      D. Besides
28. \_\_\_\_\_ the large amount of food at the party, Shohei couldn't find anything he wanted to eat.  
A. Due to      B. Despite      C. In spite      D. Although
29. At one point in the lesson it looked \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher was going to give us some chocolate but then he took the chocolate away at the end of the lesson.  
A. in case      B. as long as      C. as soon as      D. as if
30. Peter decided to pay extra for a flat near the school \_\_\_\_\_ have to walk many miles every morning from a cheaper but more distant location.  
A. in case      B. providing      C. rather than      D. instead of
31. In England we have short daylight hours in winter and very long daylight hours in summer \_\_\_\_\_ the days are always the same length in Singapore.  
A. although      B. as if      C. rather than      D. whereas
32. I really love driving, \_\_\_\_\_ on sunny days.  
A. especially      B. then      C. whereas      D. instead
33. It must be finished before tomorrow \_\_\_\_\_ long it takes.  
A. whatever      B. no matter      C. however      D. how
34. He organized the trip \_\_\_\_\_ the danger.  
A. anyway      B. regardless of      C. in spite of      D. provided that
35. I don't need help, but thanks \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. at all      B. above all      C. or else      D. anyway
36. This restaurant has some of the best chefs in the town. \_\_\_\_\_ their service is excellent.  
A. in addition to      B. moreover      C. beside      D. Apart from



37. We ordered tea but were served coffee \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. instead      B. for good      C. at last      D. rather
38. You can use my car \_\_\_\_\_ you drive carefully.  
 A. though      B. as though      C. as long as      D. lest
39. Hundreds of species of Hawaiian flowers have become extinct or rare \_\_\_\_\_ land development and the grazing of wild goats.  
 A. now that      B. due to      C. because      D. for
40. Susan broke her leg in two places. \_\_\_\_\_, she had to wear a cast and use crutches for three months.  
 A. Inasmuch as      B. Consequently      C. For that      D. Because
41. Peter will enjoy skiing more the next time he goes to Mt Helens \_\_\_\_\_ he has had skiing lessons.  
 A. so that      B. before      C. now that      D. and
42. Joe seemed to be in good mood, \_\_\_\_\_ he snapped at me angrily when I asked him to join us.  
 A. yet      B. so      C. for      D. therefore
43. Mary worked in a vineyard last summer \_\_\_\_\_ money for school expenses.  
 A. because she could earn      B. so she earned  
 C. for she earned      D. so that she could earn
44. Julie is a very good student of languages. Her brother Michael, \_\_\_\_\_, has never been able to master another language.  
 A. therefore      B. even though      C. whereas      D. on the other hand
45. I got to class on time \_\_\_\_\_ I had missed my bus.  
 A. even though      B. provided that      C. in case      D. nevertheless
46. \_\_\_\_\_ the rain has stopped, we should move on.  
 A. In case      B. But for      C. So far      D. Now that
47. Mike used to be an active person, but now he has to limit his activities \_\_\_\_\_ problems with his health.  
 A. moreover      B. although      C. because of      D. since
48. Her name is not Margaret. \_\_\_\_\_, it is Margot.  
 A. Instead      B. Of course      C. Rather      D. Now that
49. You must lend me the money for the trip. \_\_\_\_\_, I won't be able to go.  
 A. Consequently      B. furthermore      C. Otherwise      D. on the contrary
50. \_\_\_\_\_ I can't make the presentation myself, I've asked my assistant to be prepared to do it for me.  
 A. For      B. In the event that      C. Only if      D. On the whole
51. I decided to take a late flight \_\_\_\_\_ I could spend more time with my family.  
 A. so as to      B. in order      C. so that      D. in order to
52. Tom tried to learn French at a night school, \_\_\_\_\_ he gave up after a month.  
 A. therefore      B. when      C. until      D. but
53. \_\_\_\_\_ Michael became famous, he has ignored his old friends. He shouldn't do like that.  
 A. If      B. Ever since      C. Due to      D. As soon as



54. It looks like they're going to succeed \_\_\_\_\_ their present difficulties.  
A. despite      B. in spite      C. even though      D. according to
55. \_\_\_\_\_ the salary meets my expectations, I will accept the job offer.  
A. Providing that      B. As long as      C. Provided that      D. all are correct
56. \_\_\_\_\_ excellent art museum, Moscow has a world-famous ballet company.  
A. Because of      B. Until      C. In addition to      D. owing to
57. \_\_\_\_\_ playing professional volleyball, Jim also enjoys tennis.  
A. Beside      B. Moreover      C. Therefore      D. Apart from
58. My wife likes the mornings best. I, \_\_\_\_\_, prefer the evenings.  
A. moreover      B. therefore      C. whereas      D. however
59. The West coast is quite wet. \_\_\_\_\_, the east coast is much drier.  
A. In contrast      B. In contrast to
60. \_\_\_\_\_ answer the phone with enthusiasm in your voice and show your appreciation for the caller. Good phone manners are essential.  
A. Never      B. At no time      C. Hardly      D. Always
61. I quite enjoyed it; \_\_\_\_\_, I prefer something a bit more lively.  
A. or else      B. on the other hand      C. Therefore      D. all the same
62. The latest movie had a poor review. So, she accompanied her friends to see a play \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. anyway      B. whereas      C. instead      D. otherwise
63. The teacher has explained the method to her many times. \_\_\_\_\_, she does not seem to get it.  
A. Still      B. Therefore      C. Thus      D. Consequently
64. \_\_\_\_\_ the circumstances, it seems best to wait until tomorrow.  
A. In spite of      B. On the whole      C. Above all      D. In view of
65. \_\_\_\_\_ to the weather forecast it is going to snow tomorrow.  
A. According      B. Owing      C. Contrary      D. In addition
66. The picture is perfect \_\_\_\_\_ one spot.  
A. in spite of      B. except (for)      B. instead of      B. as a result of
67. She would travel more except for lack of money  
A. in case of      B. if it were not for  
C. no matter      D. in spite of the fact that
68. She is not interested in anything \_\_\_\_\_ clothes and shoes.  
A. with      B. for      C. but      D. on

## Bài 34

# MODAL PERFECT



<b>shouldn't have + V<sub>(3)</sub></b>	Việc xấu trong quá khứ, <u>lẽ ra đã không nên làm</u> . <i>You <b>shouldn't have been</b> late for class yesterday.</i>
<b>should have + V<sub>(3)</sub></b>	Việc tốt trong quá khứ, <u>lẽ ra đã phải làm</u> . <i>You <b>should have been</b> on time for class yesterday.</i>
<b>must have + V<sub>(3)</sub></b>	Việc trong quá khứ được suy đoán <u>chắc hẳn đã xảy ra</u> . <i>Everywhere is wet round here. It <b>must have rained</b> last night.</i>
<b>might have + V<sub>(3)</sub></b> <b>may have + V<sub>(3)</sub></b>	Việc trong quá khứ được suy đoán <u>có lẽ đã xảy ra</u> . <i>John <b>might have gone</b> to the movies yesterday. But I'm not sure.</i>
<b>couldn't have + V<sub>(3)</sub></b> <b>can't have + V<sub>(3)</sub></b>	Việc trong quá khứ được suy đoán <u>chắc chắn đã không thể xảy ra</u> vì vô lý. <i>You are lying. Janet <b>couldn't have rung</b> you last night. Her phone isn't working.</i>
<b>could have + V<sub>(3)</sub></b>	Việc trong quá khứ, đã có khả năng và điều kiện để làm hoặc để xảy ra, nhưng đã không làm hoặc đã không xảy ra. <i>Jane had a lot of time. She <b>could have arrived</b> earlier. But she came late so as to show off her new dress.</i>
<b>needn't have + V<sub>(3)</sub></b>	Việc trong quá khứ, không cần phải làm, nhưng đã làm, và sau đó mới biết là không cần thiết. <i>George had to go out. He thought it was going to rain, so he decided to take the umbrella. But it didn't rain, so the umbrella was not necessary. He <b>needn't have brought</b> the umbrella.</i>
<b>didn't need to + V<sub>(1)</sub></b> <b>didn't have to + V<sub>(1)</sub></b>	Việc trong quá khứ, không cần phải làm, và đã không làm. <i>I <b>didn't need to</b> buy these books because I knew they were all in the library.</i>
<b>would have + V<sub>(3)</sub></b>	Câu điều kiện loại III <i>If I had had enough money, I <b>would have bought</b> it.</i>

### ĐỀ THI ĐẠI HỌC – CAO ĐẲNG

- Jessica looks very tired. She \_\_\_\_\_ have stayed up late to finish her assignment last night. (Khối D - 2014)  
A. would                      B. should                      C. will                      D. must
- He \_\_\_\_\_ us but he was short of money at the time. (Khối D - 2013)  
A. could have helped      B. can help                      C. might help                      D. would help



3. That cannot be a true story. He \_\_\_\_\_ it up. (Khối A1 - 2012)  
A. can have made B. must have made  
C. would have made D. should have made
4. "You \_\_\_\_\_ have cooked so many dishes. There are only three of us for lunch." (Khối D - 2011)  
A. oughtn't B. wouldn't C. couldn't D. needn't
5. That style of dress \_\_\_\_\_ have been designed by Titian, because it wasn't worn till after his death. (CĐ - 2011)  
A. wouldn't B. shan't C. can't D. oughtn't
6. He \_\_\_\_\_ to the doctor after the accident, but he continued to play instead. (Khối D - 2009)  
A. must have gone B. should have gone C. couldn't go D. didn't have to go
7. My supervisor is angry with me. I didn't do all the work I \_\_\_\_\_ last week. (CĐ - 2009)  
A. should have done B. may have done  
C. need to have done D. must have done
8. - "Why wasn't your boyfriend at the party last night?"  
- "He \_\_\_\_\_ the lecture at Shaw Hall. I know he very much wanted to hear the speaker." (ĐH-CĐ Khối D - 2008)  
A. was to attend B. should have attended  
C. can have attended D. may have attended

**Ghi chú:** Dùng **must** + **V<sub>1</sub>** khi suy đoán chắc chắn về việc ở hiện tại.

**Đề thi ĐH Khối A1, 2012:**

They live on a busy road.                      a lot of noise from traffic.

- A. There must have  
C. It must have been
- B. There must be  
D. It must be

## EXERCISE

**must have – may/might have – could have – couldn't/can't have**  
**needn't have – would have – should have – shouldn't have**

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ spent so much money on CDs. You'll have problems getting to the end of the month now.
2. Janet's not in school today. She \_\_\_\_\_ overslept.
3. Grandpa moved the piano by himself. He's OK, but he \_\_\_\_\_ injured his back.
4. How did Linda catch a cold? I'm not sure. She \_\_\_\_\_ gone out in the rain.
5. I think I ate too much at dinner. I definitely \_\_\_\_\_ skipped dessert.
6. Jennifer had a lot of homework. She \_\_\_\_\_ gone to the party last night.
7. Jack \_\_\_\_\_ been in a car accident yesterday. He was home all day.
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ invited Dave to the party if we had known he was in town.
9. The ground is very wet this morning. It \_\_\_\_\_ rained last night.
10. When I got home, I found my door smashed. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ broken in.
11. The boy \_\_\_\_\_ done the dishes himself, but his father decided to help.



12. Those cool musicians play beautifully together. They \_\_\_\_\_ practised a lot.
13. Why did my son become a low paying circus clown when he \_\_\_\_\_ become a wealthy lawyer?
14. My grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ used this camera when he was young, but I'm not sure.
15. I don't have anything to wear today. I \_\_\_\_\_ done the laundry.
16. The Smiths \_\_\_\_\_ built their house anywhere. Why did he choose here?
17. Lucy shouldn't have stood on the broken chair. She \_\_\_\_\_ fallen.
18. Fortunately that teapot didn't hit anyone, but you shouldn't have thrown it out of the window, Ann! You \_\_\_\_\_ killed someone.
19. He failed the exam but he \_\_\_\_\_ passed it. It's all his own fault; he \_\_\_\_\_ worked much harder during the term.
20. – "Two of the players spent the night before the big match at a party."  
– "That was very foolish of them. They \_\_\_\_\_ gone to bed early."
29. I don't believe he \_\_\_\_\_ done it. He is too weak.
21. – "He had two bottles of Coke and got frightfully drunk."  
– "He \_\_\_\_\_ got drunk on Coke. He \_\_\_\_\_ drunk gin with it."
22. – "The instructions were in French. I translated them into English for him."  
– "You \_\_\_\_\_ translated them. He knows French."
23. We arrived and found that it was too early. We \_\_\_\_\_ been in such a hurry.
24. – "Why did Jane get a low grade on the last test? She is a good student, you know."  
– "Well, I don't know. She \_\_\_\_\_ forgotten to prepare for the test"
25. I \_\_\_\_\_ driven to work, but the weather was so nice that I decided to walk.
26. – "As I was standing in the hall your dog bit me."  
– "It \_\_\_\_\_ been my dog; he was with me all day."

## TRANSFORMATION

1. It is possible that the teacher saw me. → The teacher .....
2. It was a mistake to ask him to do it. → You .....
3. It was unnecessary for you to study this unit. → You .....
4. It was a bad idea to park outside the train station. → You .....
5. I didn't analyse the data because that had already been done. → I .....
6. It's possible that I left my book at home because it is not here. → I .....
7. Maybe she didn't mean what she said about you. → She .....
8. I'm sure that your friend took your jacket by mistake. → Your friend .....
9. I suppose you are tired after your cruise. → You .....
10. He said he had received my letter, but I haven't even mailed it yet. → He .....
11. I am sure he was too tired to go to the concert. → He .....
12. I regret behaving so badly during the lesson. → I .....
13. I am sure it was a misunderstanding. → It .....
14. I didn't wear a sunhat, and now my head hurts. → I .....
15. I left because I knew I would have nothing to do if I stayed. → I .....
16. I don't think the man you saw was Jack. He's been abroad since summer.  
→ You .....



**needn't have + V(3)****didn't need to +V (1)**

1. My friends phoned to say that they couldn't come to eat, so I (*needn't have cooked / didn't need to cook*).
2. You (*needn't have cooked / didn't need to cook*) supper for me. I ate on the plane.
3. We bought a take-away meal so I (*needn't have cooked / didn't need to cook*)
4. We knew we were early, so we (*needn't have hurried / didn't need to hurry*)
5. We're in plenty of time after all. We (*needn't have hurried / didn't need to hurry*) like that.
6. We (*needn't have bought / didn't need to buy*) that new computer. We already had enough.
7. I (*needn't have seen / didn't need to see*) him, so I sent him a letter.
8. I (*needn't have brought / didn't need to bring*) my umbrella. It's turned out very sunny.
9. The plane was late. I (*needn't have got / didn't need to get*) to the airport so ridiculously early.
10. I (*needn't have written / didn't need to write*) to him because he phoned me shortly afterwards. But I had written, thus wasting my time.
11. They had already finished, so I \_\_\_\_\_ anything and was able to leave early. (*needn't have done / didn't need to do*)
12. When the party was over, I realized that you (*needn't have cooked / didn't need to cook*) so much food as most of it was untouched.
13. The bus arrived two minutes after you left, so you (*needn't have taken / didn't need to take*) a cab.
14. It isn't necessary to bring skis as they are included in the package. → You .....

## Bài 35

# MUST, MUSTN'T, NEEDN'T

<b>MUST + V</b>	phải làm, bắt buộc
<b>MUSTN'T + V</b>	cấm làm, không được phép
<b>NEEDN'T + V</b>	không cần làm, không bắt buộc

- Ghi chú:**
1. You mustn't use your smartphone while you are driving.  
= are not to
  2. You needn't go just yet; you can stay a little longer.  
= don't need to  
= don't have to  
= haven't got to

(Cf. Living English Structure 40, 41)



## PRACTICE

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ write the report now. You can do it later.
2. You can tell Tom what I said but he \_\_\_\_\_ keep it secret.
3. (Sách Giáo Khoa 12, trang 115) There's plenty of time for you to make up your mind. You \_\_\_\_\_ decide now.
4. I'm not deaf. You \_\_\_\_\_ shout.
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ touch that switch, whatever you do.
6. Students \_\_\_\_\_ use their mobile phones during the lessons.
7. I have enough meat in my fridge so I \_\_\_\_\_ go to the butcher's today.
8. You \_\_\_\_\_ tell Sandra. She can't keep a secret.
9. We haven't got plenty of time. We \_\_\_\_\_ leave right now.
10. The last bus is at eleven. I \_\_\_\_\_ miss it or else I won't be able to get home.
11. You \_\_\_\_\_ wash these fruits. I've already washed them.
12. You \_\_\_\_\_ drive at more than 70 mph in the UK.
13. We \_\_\_\_\_ walk all the way home. We can take a taxi.
14. You \_\_\_\_\_ translate that. I understand what you say.
15. We've got plenty of time. We \_\_\_\_\_ hurry.
16. Tom has broken his leg. He \_\_\_\_\_ walk a lot. It is not good for him.
17. Policemen \_\_\_\_\_ drink on duty.
18. That's not a secret. You \_\_\_\_\_ whisper.
19. This book is very expensive. You \_\_\_\_\_ look after it very carefully.
20. You \_\_\_\_\_ phone me when you arrive at home but I hope you will.
21. That's a secret. You \_\_\_\_\_ tell anybody.
22. We have enough food at home. We \_\_\_\_\_ go shopping today.
23. I can go on my own. You \_\_\_\_\_ come with me.
24. I haven't been to the dentist for ages. I \_\_\_\_\_ go soon.
25. I know what you mean. You \_\_\_\_\_ explain further.
26. I'll do everything. You \_\_\_\_\_ do anything unless you really want to.
27. You can type those letters later. You \_\_\_\_\_ do it now.
28. I have to go now. I \_\_\_\_\_ be late for work.
29. You \_\_\_\_\_ come if you don't want to but we will be very pleased if you do.
30. You \_\_\_\_\_ leave out these difficult exercises; do them all.
31. I want a new house. It \_\_\_\_\_ have a swimming pool but it must have a nice garden.
32. I don't mind at all. You \_\_\_\_\_ apologise.
33. Jim gave me a letter to post. I \_\_\_\_\_ forget to do that.
34. I can find my own way there. You \_\_\_\_\_ wait for me.
35. You \_\_\_\_\_ talk so loudly in here. People are trying to work.
36. I haven't got lots of money ; I \_\_\_\_\_ waste it.
37. Keep quiet. The baby is asleep. You \_\_\_\_\_ shout like that.
38. The entrance is free of charge, so you \_\_\_\_\_ buy a ticket.



Đề thi TNPT 2012:

39. We have enough food at home so we \_\_\_\_\_ do any shopping today.

Đề thi TNPT 2013:

40. You \_\_\_\_\_ wash those apples. They have already been washed.

## Bài 36

# PHRASAL VERBS

### BẢNG TÓI THIỂU

1. <b>apply for</b> .....	14. <b>go out</b> .....	27. <b>speak about</b> .....
2. <b>apply to</b> .....	15. <b>hold up</b> .....	28. <b>stand for</b> .....
3. <b>ask for</b> .....	16. <b>hurry up</b> .....	29. <b>stare at</b> .....
4. <b>carry out</b> .....	17. <b>laugh at</b> .....	30. <b>take after</b> .....
5. <b>discuss</b> .....	18. <b>leave</b> .....	31. <b>take off</b> .....
6. <b>have discussion about</b> .....	19. <b>leave for</b> .....	32. <b>talk to</b> .....
7. <b>fill in</b> .....	20. <b>look after</b> .....	33. <b>throw at</b> .....
8. <b>find out</b> .....	21. <b>look at</b> .....	34. <b>try out</b> .....
9. <b>get over</b> .....	22. <b>look forward to</b> .....	35. <b>turn off</b> .....
10. <b>give up</b> .....	23. <b>look up</b> .....	36. <b>turn on</b> .....
11. <b>glance at</b> .....	24. <b>point at</b> .....	37. <b>turn round</b> .....
12. <b>go off</b> .....	25. <b>put on</b> .....	38. <b>turn up</b> .....
13. <b>go on</b> .....	26. <b>speak to</b> .....	39. <b>wash up</b> .....

### BẢNG MỞ RỘNG

### PHRASAL VERBS AND IDIOMS

1. <b>account for</b> .....	12. <b>break down</b> .....
2. <b>apply for</b> .....	13. <b>break into</b> .....
3. <b>apply to</b> .....	14. <b>break out</b> .....
4. <b>ask for</b> .....	15. <b>bring about</b> .....
5. <b>be over</b> .....	16. <b>bring up</b> .....
6. <b>be sure to</b> .....	17. <b>burst into tears</b> .....
7. <b>be up</b> .....	18. <b>call on</b> .....
8. <b>be up to</b> .....	19. <b>carry out</b> .....
9. <b>bear in mind</b> .....	20. <b>catch sight of</b> .....
10. <b>beat about the bush</b> .....	21. <b>catch up with</b> .....
11. <b>benefit from</b> .....	22. <b>check in</b> .....



23. cheer up .....
24. come across .....
25. come round / come to .....
26. come up to .....
27. come up with .....
28. compare to .....
29. compare with .....
30. contribute to .....
31. count on .....
32. cut down on .....
33. deal with .....
34. dedicate (sth.) to .....
35. devote (sth.) to .....
36. be devoted to .....
37. cut down on .....
38. die down .....
39. do away with .....
40. do one's best .....
41. do without .....
42. drop in .....
43. eat out .....
44. eat up .....
45. face up to .....
46. fall asleep .....
47. fall behind .....
48. fall in love with .....
49. figure out .....
50. fill in .....
51. find fault with .....
52. find out .....
53. focus on .....
54. get along .....
55. get on with / get along with .....
56. get in touch with .....
57. get on one's nerves .....
58. get over .....
59. get rid of .....
60. give up .....

61. glance at .....
62. go in for .....
63. go off .....
64. go on .....
65. go out .....
66. hang up .....
67. have discussion about .....
68. (discuss + Ø) .....
69. have to do with .....
70. hear from .....
71. hold up .....
72. hurry up .....
73. infer from .....
74. insist on .....
75. jot down .....
76. keep away from .....
77. keep in mind .....
78. keep in touch with .....
79. keep on .....
80. keep up with .....
81. know sb. by sight .....
82. laugh at .....
83. lay off .....
84. lead to .....
85. leave for .....
86. let sb. down .....
87. line up .....
88. live on .....
89. look after .....
90. look at .....
91. look down on .....
92. look forward to .....
93. look into .....
94. look like .....
95. look out .....
96. look up .....
97. look up to .....
98. love sb. at first sight .....



99. **make a point of** .....
100. **make an effort** .....
101. **make every effort** .....
102. **make great efforts** .....
103. **make believe** .....
104. **make (both) ends meet** .....
105. **make friends with** .....
106. **make out** .....
107. **make room for** .....
108. **make sense** .....
109. **make up** .....
110. **make up for** .....
111. **make up one's mind** .....
112. **make yourself at home** .....
113. **object to** .....
114. **pass away** .....
115. **pay attention to** .....
116. **pick out** .....
117. **pick up** .....
118. **point at** .....
119. **put an end to** .....
120. **put away** .....
121. **put off** .....
122. **put on** .....
123. **put on weight** .....
124. **put out** .....
125. **put up** .....
126. **put sb. up** .....
127. **put up with** .....
128. **refer to** .....
129. **rely on** .....
130. **result in** .....
131. **result from** .....
132. **run into** .....
133. **run out of** .....
134. **see sb. off** .....
135. **set fire to** .....
136. **set off / set out** .....

137. **show off** .....
138. **show up** .....
139. **shut sb. up** .....
140. **shut up** .....
141. **slow down** .....
142. **smile at** .....
143. **speak to** .....
144. **speed up** .....
145. **stand for** .....
146. **stand in queue** .....
147. **stand out** .....
148. **stand up** .....
149. **stare at** .....
150. **suffer from** .....
151. **take after** .....
152. **take into account** .....
153. **take into consideration** .....
154. **take it for granted** .....
155. **take notice of** .....
156. **take off** .....
157. **take one's time** .....
158. **take turns** .....
159. **take up** .....
160. **tell apart** .....
161. **think twice** .....
162. **throw at** .....
163. **throw away** .....
164. **throw up** .....
165. **tidy up** .....
166. **try one's best** .....
167. **try on** .....
168. **try out** .....
169. **turn down** .....
170. **turn off** .....
171. **turn on** .....
172. **turn out** .....
173. **turn (a)round** .....
174. **turn up** .....



175. **use up** .....  
 176. **wait for** .....  
 177. **wait on** .....  
 178. **wake sb. up** .....  
 179. **wake up** .....

180. **wash up** .....  
 181. **watch out / look out** .....  
 182. **watch out for** .....  
 183. **wipe out** .....  
 184. **wear out** .....

## MULTIPLE CHOICE

1. Regular exercise and good diet will bring \_\_\_\_\_ fitness and health.  
 A. from                      B. to                      C. about                      D. up
2. It was kind of her to put me \_\_\_\_\_ while I was on a business trip in her town.  
 A. down                      B. up                      C. off                      D. in
3. If we can't afford a car, we'll just have to \_\_\_\_\_ one.  
 A. do with                      B. put up with                      C. do without                      D. catch up with
4. Water pollution \_\_\_\_\_ 80% of all infectious diseases.  
 A. comes across                      B. runs into                      C. cuts down on                      D. accounts for
5. SCUBA stands \_\_\_\_\_ "self contained underwater breathing apparatus."  
 A. up                      B. off                      C. for                      D. by
6. His regular practice resulted \_\_\_\_\_ better fluency.  
 A. from                      B. up                      C. in                      D. to
7. His difficulty in walking results \_\_\_\_\_ a childhood illness.  
 A. from                      B. up                      C. in                      D. to
8. The boss wants an explanation. How do you \_\_\_\_\_ the decrease in sales?  
 A. make up                      B. break down                      C. add up                      D. account for
9. Disposing of waste and rubbish is a hard problem to \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. deal with                      B. carry out                      C. put up                      D. get away
10. The police investigated the case very thoroughly.  
 A. searched for                      B. pointed out                      C. went off                      D. looked into
11. The price of the item has been reduced to compensate for a defect.  
 A. watch out for                      B. make up for                      C. go in for                      D. call for
12. She has been \_\_\_\_\_ cancer for two years.  
 A. taking up                      B. putting away                      C. suffering from                      D. putting up
13. He needs more exercise; he should start playing tennis.  
 A. take up                      B. go off                      C. come up to                      D. break into
14. **The object of teaching a child is to enable them to \_\_\_\_\_ without a teacher.** - Elbert Hubbard  
 A. try out                      B. show off                      C. get along                      D. cheer up
15. We will have to start laying people \_\_\_\_\_ if things don't start to improve.  
 A. off                      B. down                      C. away                      D. out
16. She's been married three times and has brought \_\_\_\_\_ four children.  
 A. in                      B. up                      C. on                      D. out
17. You must check \_\_\_\_\_ your luggage before taking the plane.  
 A. in                      B. up                      C. off                      D. out



18. "She has turned down their job offer" means \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. She thinks it's a good offer.      B. She has refused it.  
C. She has accepted it.      D. She's considering it.
19. These environmentalists \_\_\_\_\_ preserving the earth's natural resources.  
A. are devoted to    B. devote to      C. devotes to      D. devoted to
20. I can't offer hospitality to you because my flat is too small.  
A. put you up      B. send for you      C. let you in      D. cheer you up
21. The iPhone caused a sensation when it was introduced, and people \_\_\_\_\_ for days for a chance to buy one.  
A. stood off      B. lined up      C. fell behind      D. ran into
22. He doesn't have a very good relationship with his stepmother.  
A. come up with    B. put up with      C. keep up with    D. get on with
23. The twins were identical, and we couldn't \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. tell them apart    B. put them away    C. clear them up    D. bring them up
24. If you are not equal to others, first you have to \_\_\_\_\_ with them before you can keep up with them.  
A. bring up      B. show up      C. give up      D. catch up
25. Before \_\_\_\_\_ for Los Angeles, it is urgent that I get my car serviced today.  
A. holding on      B. letting down      C. giving out      D. setting off
26. Why does Alma \_\_\_\_\_ Mario just because his family is so poor?  
A. take off      B. show off      C. turn over      D. look down on
27. Food and drink \_\_\_\_\_ our health.  
A. catch up with    B. look down on    C. add up to      D. have to do with
28. I hadn't seen him in ages and I suddenly ran \_\_\_\_\_ him the other day.  
A. into      B. up      C. over      D. back
29. Oh, we can't make the cake! We've run \_\_\_\_\_ flour.  
A. off      B. out of      C. away      D. down
30. I'm thinking of \_\_\_\_\_ a new hobby. Maybe I'll give painting a try.  
A. doing up      B. setting up      C. taking up      D. making up
31. During the trip, she and I took \_\_\_\_\_ driving so that neither of us would tire out.  
A. off      B. up      C. after      D. turns
32. Look \_\_\_\_\_ broken glass on the floor.  
A. up to      B. out for      C. down on      D. forward to
33. He \_\_\_\_\_ his shoes wandering around Mexico City.  
A. stood for      B. used up      C. ran out of      D. wore out
34. If you go hiking, you should watch \_\_\_\_\_ for poison oak and snakes.  
A. over      B. up      C. out      D. on
35. Mr. Lee's doctor told him to \_\_\_\_\_ eating fatty foods from now on.  
A. watch out for    B. look down on    C. cut down on    D. make room for
36. The soldiers \_\_\_\_\_ when they knew they were beaten.  
A. got over      B. gave up      C. turned up      D. died down
37. Try \_\_\_\_\_ the shoes to see if they fit.  
A. after      B. on      C. away      D. off



38. I couldn't make \_\_\_\_ all the words on the sign because my glasses were dirty.  
A. up                      B. out                      C. clear                      D. up with
39. I don't think they should abolish military service.  
A. turn out                      B. do away with                      C. set off                      D. go in for
40. I've got to reduce the amount of sweets I eat.  
A. cut down on                      B. give way to                      C. get rid of                      D. make up for
41. – "What does he look \_\_\_\_?" – "He's tall and thin, with brown hair."  
A. for                      B. after                      C. like                      D. out
42. It makes \_\_\_\_ to pay off your debts before you start trying to save money.  
A. up                      B. believe                      C. sense                      D. into
43. While looking through the books, he found an old and valuable map.  
A. broke into                      B. came across                      C. put off                      D. threw away
44. Our visit proved to be a waste of time because he wasn't at home.  
A. showed up                      B. broke down                      C. ran into                      D. turned out
45. To \_\_\_\_ means to apply cosmetics to (the face) to enhance one's appearance or so as to alter the appearance for a theatrical role.  
A. take up                      B. make up                      C. show up                      D. shut up
46. No one could account for it. They couldn't \_\_\_\_ it.  
A. explain                      B. estimate                      C. interpret                      D. describe
47. He lost the tennis match, so we will try to cheer him \_\_\_\_.  
A. off                      B. away                      C. on                      D. up
48. When you \_\_\_\_ somebody off, you go to the airport, station, etc. to say good-bye to them.  
A. go                      B. put                      C. turn                      D. see
49. The dancers would not \_\_\_\_ up practicing even though they were exhausted.  
A. bring                      B. turn                      C. show                      D. give
50. You'd better cut \_\_\_\_ animal fat if you want to lower your cholesterol level.  
A. down with                      B. off with                      C. out in                      D. down on
51. The mobile phone is a part of our lives today. We can't \_\_\_\_ it.  
A. do with                      B. do without                      C. deal with                      D. deal without
52. Don't worry we'll have to wait a little longer because he'll \_\_\_\_ soon.  
A. turn up                      B. turn in                      C. turn into                      D. turn down
53. – "That old paint that you have stored in your garage is a fine hazard."  
– "You're right. I should \_\_\_\_ it."  
A. get away from                      B. get rid of                      C. get through with                      D. get along with
54. You can tell by the way she talks and behaves that she \_\_\_\_ her mother.  
A. takes to                      B. takes in                      C. takes back                      D. takes after
55. "Who \_\_\_\_ out that tie for you?" – "No one. I chose it myself."  
A. bought                      B. brought                      C. turned                      D. picked
56. I'm tired \_\_\_\_ listening to the same old voices saying the same old things.  
A. on                      B. from                      C. of                      D. with
57. One way of getting rid of something is to \_\_\_\_.  
A. look at it                      B. admire it                      C. throw it away                      D. keep it



58. Many people find it hard to \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that they are getting old  
A. look down on    B. keep up with    C. face up to    D. get rid of
59. She never \_\_\_\_\_ to the amount of work her boss charged her with.  
A. objected to    B. came up    C. looked up    D. paid attention
60. We arranged to meet at ten o'clock last Sunday but he didn't \_\_\_\_\_ on time.  
A. give in    B. look up    C. put out    D. turn up
61. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ that the law will be respected.  
A. takes turns    B. takes it for granted  
C. takes into consideration    D. takes into account
62. Seen from space, the Earth \_\_\_\_\_ a pale blue ball covered with water.  
A. looks like    B. shows up    C. turns out    D. comes up to
63. He turned \_\_\_\_\_ and faced the window.  
A. down    B. out    C. round    D. on
64. If I say that the meeting is over, I mean that the meeting has \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. just begun    B. ended    C. been interesting    D. been called off
65. I can \_\_\_\_\_ my parents to help me in an emergency.  
A. look up to    B. wait on    C. count on    D. ask for
66. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ the signature on this document.  
A. make up for    B. make sense    C. make out    D. make up
67. Young musicians will get the chance to \_\_\_\_\_ off their musical skills.  
A. go    B. call    C. turn    D. show
68. At first they thought that the man was dead, but soon he \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. took to    B. woke up    C. turned round    D. came to
69. By pushing our chairs closer together, we were able to \_\_\_\_\_ another person at our table.  
A. keep in touch with    B. come up to    C. make room for    D. make up for
70. The truth \_\_\_\_\_ out to be stranger than we had expected.  
A. went    B. turned    C. made    D. broke
71. A huge fire \_\_\_\_\_ on the fifth floor.  
A. turned down    B. broke out    C. went up    D. brought about
72. Will you keep your eye \_\_\_\_\_ my suitcase while I go to get the tickets?  
A. with    B. off    C. on    D. to
73. The children \_\_\_\_\_ that they were cowboys and Indians.  
A. made believe    B. threw up    C. took up    D. did without
74. He \_\_\_\_\_ for the night because I'd missed the last bus and there were no night buses running.  
A. let me down    B. shut me up    C. put me up    D. brought me up
75. The word *chair* \_\_\_\_\_ a piece of furniture.  
A. refers to    B. leads to    C. is up to    D. comes up to
76. The black lettering really stands \_\_\_\_\_ on that orange background.  
A. by    B. up    C. out    D. for
77. Although it was a wonderful job offer he decided to \_\_\_\_\_ it down in the end.  
A. pass    B. turn    C. bring    D. put



## TRANSFORMATION

1. Always request your parents' permission before you go anywhere. (ask)
2. The young teacher tries very hard to help these disabled children. (makes)
3. I promise I will try to the best of my ability to pass the examination. (do)
4. I have made every effort to improve my English. (tried)
5. The police are investigating the circumstance surrounding the death of a young girl. (looking)
- 
6. I arrived late because I just missed the train. → I .....
7. Who do you resemble - your father or mother? → Who do you .....
8. WHO is an abbreviation for the World Health Organization. → WHO .....
9. I have decided not to leave the job although the pay was low. → I have .....
10. They were discussing the problem of unemployment. → They were .....
11. He has to work at two jobs to earn just enough money to pay for his basic expenses. → He has to work at two jobs to .....
12. The young couple began to love each other and married soon after. → The.....
13. John met an old friend by chance at the concert. → John .....
14. I think I am getting fat. I had better go on a diet. → I think I am .....
15. She is proud of her musical talents. → She takes ..... ; → She prides .....
16. After the dance ended, we all went to a restaurant. → After the dance was.....
17. Be sure to complete all the blanks on the application. → Be sure to .....
18. I haven't received news or information from my brother very often since he moved to Chicago. → I haven't .....
19. They are laughing at of Carla's new hair style. Don't you think that it's really strange? → They are .....
20. Please remember that you promised to call Stan around noon. → Please .....
21. On the American flag, each star represents one of the fifty states.  
→ On the American flag, each star .....
22. Last night several friends visited us at our home. → Last night .....
23. Ann chose a good book to give to her brother as a graduation gift. → Ann .....
24. They rejected her application because with no reason given. → They .....
25. Let's have a meal at home tonight. → Let's .....
26. Our company has to cut employees to reduce costs. → Our company .....
27. He is trying to compensate for the time he lost. → He is trying to .....
28. Never postpone till tomorrow what you can do today. → Never .....
29. The destruction of the rain forest has caused environmental damage.  
→ The destruction .....
30. Reduce the amount of fried food if you don't want to put on weight. → Cut ...
31. Stop it! I can't tolerate this noise any longer. → Stop it! I can't put .....
32. We have a spare room, so you can stay with us.  
→ We have a spare room, so we can .....
33. Our boss criticizes our work all time. → Our boss finds .....
34. Mike never works rapidly. He always does without rush. → Mike .....



# Bài 37

## ADJ + PREPOSITION

absent .....	famous .....	perfect .....
absorbed .....	far.....	pleasant .....
accustomed .....	fed up .....	pleased .....
afraid .....	filled .....	popular .....
ahead .....	fond .....	present .....
angry .....	free .....	proud .....
anxious .....	friendly .....	qualified .....
ashamed .....	full .....	quick .....
aware .....	furious .....	related .....
bad .....	good .....	responsible .....
bad .....	good .....	responsible .....
based .....	grateful .....	rich .....
bored .....	grateful .....	sad .....
busy .....	guilty .....	safe .....
capable .....	harmful .....	satisfied .....
certain .....	helpful .....	scared .....
clever .....	important .....	serious .....
concerned .....	incapable .....	short .....
confident .....	independent .....	similar .....
confused .....	interested .....	skilful .....
conscious .....	involved .....	slow .....
crowded .....	keen .....	sorry .....
dedicated .....	kind .....	sorry .....
dependent .....	kind .....	successful .....
devoted .....	late .....	surprised .....
different .....	limited .....	terrified .....
disappointed .....	married .....	thankful .....
dissatisfied .....	necessary .....	thankful .....
equal .....	nervous .....	tired .....
excited .....	next .....	tired .....
faithful .....	occupied .....	unaware .....
familiar .....	open .....	used .....
familiar .....	opposed .....	worried .....



## EXAMPLES

1. Larry was *absent from* school, but he had a good reason.
2. He was *absorbed in* a book and didn't hear me.
3. My father is *accustomed to* drinking cold water even in winters.
4. Elizabeth is *accustomed to* making long journeys abroad alone.
5. She is *afraid of* speaking in public.
6. I can't believe it. Carlos is *afraid of* pigeons. It's ridiculous.
7. I have to travel by car or boat because I am *afraid of* flying.
8. Our car couldn't move because there was an accident *ahead of* us.
9. She had been awake all night thinking about the future that lay *ahead of* her.
10. We have a very busy day *ahead of* us,
11. I'm really *angry with* John for his total lack of responsibility.
12. Her parents were *anxious about* her poor health.
13. Jason is *anxious about* his future and his career.
14. She is *ashamed of* her bad grades.
15. Are you *aware of* the situation in Sierra Leone?
16. Most people are still not *aware of* the extent of environmental pollution
17. I'm really *bad at* expressing myself clearly.
18. Looking at screens all day is *bad for* your eyesight.
19. Eating too much sugar is *bad for* your health.
20. This movie is *based on* a true story.
21. My opinion is *based on* information I found on the Internet.
22. I got *bored with* listening to your complaints all the time.
23. She can't come with us because she is *busy with* her term paper.
24. You are *capable of* doing better work than this.
25. He is *capable of* winning a gold medal.
26. If you want to be *certain of* getting a ticket, book now.
27. She was *clever at* hiding her feelings.
28. People are *concerned about* the increasing air pollution in Istanbul.
29. Ryan is *confident of* his safe driving skills.
30. The clever girl was *confident of* winning the gold medal.
31. He is *confident of* the victory.
32. I get *confused about* all this new technology.
33. He was *conscious of* being watched.
34. We are *conscious of* the need to reduce waste and prevent pollution.
35. Disneyland is *crowded with* tourists in July.
36. This organization is *dedicated to* ending poverty.
37. In nature, one species is *dependent upon* another for survival.
38. Young people today are more *dependent on* their parents than in the past.
39. Many volunteers are *devoted to* the care of the aged and infirm.
40. His photographs are very *different from* his paintings.
41. The film was *different from* what I had expected.



42. I was *disappointed with* the way you behaved last night.
43. We enjoyed our holiday but we were *disappointed with* our hotel.
44. Our customers are increasingly *dissatisfied with* our products.
45. Women, who are *equal to* men in intelligence, must be given equal educational opportunity.
46. One mile is *equal to* 1.609344 kilometers, or roughly 1.6.
47. He is *excited about* his birthday party next week.
48. If you are *faithful to* a person, organization, or idea, you remain firm in your support for them.
49. I am *familiar with* the streets of Saigon.
50. The streets of Saigon are *familiar to* me.
51. Florence is *famous for* its art treasures.
52. He is *famous for* marrying a famous actress.
53. These children live so *far from* school that they have to walk two hours each morning and two hours back home in the afternoon.
54. The conclusions drawn from those surveys are *far from* being accurate.
55. He is *fed up with* doing the same thing every day.
56. I'm *fed up with* the people who keep criticising others.
57. My garden is *filled with* flowers in spring.
58. His heart was *filled with* joy when she smiled at him.
59. I'm very *fond of* rock music. I play the guitar.
60. If you are not *fond of children* and you don't enjoy singing, kindergarten is not the right place for you.
61. Hand washing is a key way to keep children *free from* infection.
62. A sociable person is always willing to talk and be *friendly with* other people.
63. Fields and ditches are *full of* water after the rain.
64. The message he sent to me was *full of* mistakes.
65. I wish you a new year *full of* blessings. May happiness, prosperity and love be with you and your family.
66. I was late and the boss was *furious with* me.
67. I'm quite *good at* English but I'm bad at maths.
68. He is very friendly and *good at* making new friends.
69. I'm not very *good at* repairing things.
70. Jogging is *good for* your health but smoking is bad for you.
71. I am *grateful to* you for all good things you have done for me.

72. Be grateful to your parents for their support, their encouragement and undying love. Be grateful for the opportunity of life that they gave you. *Hãy biết ơn cha mẹ vì cha mẹ nuôi nấng, khuyến khích và mãi yêu thương ta. Hãy biết ơn về cơ hội trong đời sống mà cha mẹ đem lại cho ta.*



73. The banker was *guilty of* stealing money.
74. He found himself *guilty of* not spending time with his children
75. Not only can polluted water harm fish, but it can also be *harmful to* humans.
76. Many types of bacteria are *helpful to* human and animal health, but others cause infectious diseases.
77. A new chewing gum has been developed that is *helpful to* those who want to stop smoking.
78. Air and water are *important to* life.
79. Parents are *important to* children both as role models and as supporters of their efforts
80. It is *important for* you to take this medicine twice a day.
81. I'm afraid he is *incapable of* understanding the most basic concepts.
82. The company seems *incapable of* managing this responsibility.
83. New mothers are always *interested in* learning about caring for their newborns.
84. She has been *involved in* volunteer work for many years.
85. Many people were *involved in* the crime.
86. More than 30 software firms were *involved in* the project.
87. I'm not very *keen on* the blue one. Is there another colour?
88. Richard is very *keen on* playing tennis.
89. We should be *kind to* those who are unkind to us.
90. It was very *kind of* you to buy me such a wonderful present. (câu khen)
91. If Cathy continues to be *late for* work, the boss will fire her.
92. Places on the bus are *limited to* 50 - so book early!
93. The problem of stress is certainly not *limited to* people who work (= it exists for others too).
94. Linda is *married to* an American engineer.
95. A girl shouldn't be forced to get *married to* a man she doesn't like.
96. Air and food are *necessary to* animal life.
97. Recreation and relaxation are *necessary to* the mental health and stability of human beings.
98. It is *necessary for* us to have a healthy lifestyle.
99. I'm *nervous about* my driving test tomorrow.
100. Who works in the office *next to* yours?
101. *Next to* your mother, who do you love most?
102. She keeps herself fully *occupied with* volunteer activities.
103. He's still fully *occupied with* writing his report.
104. The dancing class is *open to* all ages.
105. The Library is *open only to* members and associates of St Paul's College.
106. They are *opposed to* building a new road in the park.
107. I'm *opposed to* hitting children for any reason.
108. These shoes are *perfect for* hiking in the mountains.
109. The weather was *perfect for* a day at the beach.



110. That bucket with the hole in the bottom is a poor bucket, but it is *perfect for* watering plants.
111. Light is *pleasant to* the eye; an orange is *pleasant to* the taste; harmony is *pleasant to* the ear; a rose is *pleasant to* the smell.
112. Do the best you can to make yourself *pleasant to* everybody.
113. Usually, a picnic in the park is considered an activity *pleasant to* all people.
114. We're very *pleased with* your progress.
115. She was very *pleased with* her exam results.
116. A number of uninvited guests were *present at* her wedding.
117. Most fathers wish to be *present at* the birth of their child.
118. That song was *popular with* people from my father's generation.
119. My parents don't know the singers who are very *popular with* teenagers.
120. He was *proud of* having completed the marathon.
121. Dad is very *proud of* his old coin collection.
122. I don't really feel *qualified for* that job. I won't apply for it.
123. Records of your prior work performance may be used to establish that you were *qualified for* the new position.
124. She was *quick at* understanding what we wanted her to do.
125. He was never as *quick at* maths as me and he has to substitute the answers into the formula to check that it gives a true result.
126. He is *quick at* losing his temper.
127. High unemployment is *related to* high crime rates.
128. The husband of your mother's sister is only *related to* you through marriage, not by blood.
129. His mother and mine are sisters, so we are *related to* each other.
130. Paul is directly *responsible for* the efficient running of the office.
131. In Australia, the Prime Minister and the Cabinet are *responsible to* the House of Representatives.
132. Teachers are *responsible for* the curriculum they provide which should reflect school and local education policy and Government legislation.
133. Teachers are *responsible to* the Principal and, in her absence or on her behalf, the Vice Principal.
134. He is *responsible to* the president *for* his decisions.
135. Terrorists were *responsible for* the bombing of the World Trade Center in 1993.
136. South Africa is *rich in* natural resources like diamonds and gold.
137. Foods *rich in* vitamin A include cod liver oil, cooked liver, egg yolk, corn, carrots and sweet potatoes.
138. She was still feeling very *sad about* her father's death.
139. I was *sad about* leaving my mother alone.
140. We are all *sad about* the recent violence in our city.
141. Many people believe that immunization will keep you *safe from* disease.
142. It's difficult to make airports *safe from* terrorist attacks.



- 143. *It is not safe for* children to go home unaccompanied.
- 144. We're very *satisfied with* your son's progress this term.
- 145. I wasn't *satisfied with* the customer service at the bank.
- 146. She went to zoo with us even though she is *scared of* large animals.
- 147. Is she *serious about* becoming a professional boxer?
- 148. If you are *serious about* going ahead with this, let's have a meeting.
- 149. Usually at the end of the month, I'm *short of* money.
- 150. I wanted to bake a cake, but I was *short of* eggs.
- 151. Your new laptop is *similar to* mine. They have many common features.

152. Life is very ***similar to*** boxing ring. Defeat is not declared when you fall down; it is declared when you refuse to rise up  
*Đời sống ví như võ đài quyền anh. Người ta tuyên bố bạn thua trận không phải khi bạn gục ngã, nhưng là khi bạn không chịu đứng lên.*

- 153. He is *skillful at* making wedding cakes.
- 154. Odysseus is represented as the "wiliest" because he is so *skillful at* lying.
- 155. He is a bit *slow at* maths.
- 156. The company is very *slow at* answering my letters.

*A Practical English Grammar §27.B:*

- 157. I'm *sorry for* breaking your window. (*apology*)
- 158. I'm *sorry about* your window. (*apology / regret*)
- 159. I'm *sorry for* Peter. (*pity*)
- 160. *I'm sorry for* being late.
- 161. I'm *sorry for* shouting at you yesterday.
- 162. I'm *sorry for* not having gone to see my papa before he died.
- 163. My father is *sorry about* not having gone to college.
- 164. I'm *sorry about* the noise last night.
- 165. I'm just *sorry about* all the trouble I've caused her.
- 166. I feel very *sorry for* Peter. He has been fired.
- 167. He felt *sorry for* his friend whose mother died recently.
- 168. The world felt *sorry for* the victims of the tsunami.
- 169. She bought the new book about how to be *successful in/at* job interviews.
- 170. I hope you will be *successful in/at* finding a new job soon.
- 171. We were *surprised at* the news.
- 172. She was *surprised at* how many people were lined up for the big sale.
- 173. The surfer was *terrified of* being attacked by a shark.
- 174. He was so *terrified of* heights that he completely avoided air travel.
- 175. The flood victims were *thankful for* the hot tea given by the rescue team.
- 176. We are so *thankful for* all the support we received.
- 177. I am *thankful to* my parents *for* everything they've done and *for* every prayer they've made for me to become who I am right now.



178. Justin is *thankful to* co-workers for being supportive.  
 179. I'm still a bit *tired from* the journey.  
 180. I am dead *tired from* walking around all day.  
 181. My eyes are *tired from* all this reading.  
 182. I'm *tired of* being asked the same questions repeatedly.  
 183. I am *tired of* eating out. I really miss home-cooked food.  
 184. They walked on, completely *unaware of* the danger.  
 185. I was *unaware of* any connection between those two people.  
 186. Before having a child, I had been *unaware of* how new parents felt.  
 187. Tony has lived in England for a year so he is *used to* driving on the left now.  
 188. The hikers were *worried about* not having enough water.  
 189. He is *worried about* his upcoming examinations.  
 190. Some consumers are *worried about* using their credit cards over the Internet.

### EXERCISE (trang 197, phần VIII)

## Bài 38

# SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

### MULTIPLE CHOICE

- His choice of words \_\_\_\_\_ very good.  
 A. are                      B. be                      C. is                      D. being
- Anybody who \_\_\_\_\_ my keys will be given a reward,  
 A. find                      B. finds                      C. are finding                      D. found
- The Browns \_\_\_\_\_ here since 1950.  
 A. are living                      B. has lived                      C. have been living                      D. has been living
- John, as well as I, \_\_\_\_\_ a student.  
 A. are                      B. were                      C. is                      D. has been
- Not only John but also his brothers \_\_\_\_\_ in debt.  
 A. is                      B. have                      C. was                      D. were
- The majority of the TOEFL tests \_\_\_\_\_ difficult.  
 A. are                      B. is                      C. be                      D. being
- Local news \_\_\_\_\_ on TV every afternoon at 5:50 pm.  
 A. were                      B. was                      C. is                      D. are
- The number of students \_\_\_\_\_ increasing now.  
 A. are                      B. was                      C. were                      D. is
- A number of students \_\_\_\_\_ playing table-tennis now.  
 A. are                      B. was                      C. were                      D. is



10. Physics \_\_\_\_\_ my favorite subject.  
A. are                      B. is                      C. was                      D. have been
11. The boy, with his two companions, \_\_\_\_\_ the cherry tree now.  
A. has split              B. have split              C. is splitting              D. are splitting
12. Neither the mother nor the children \_\_\_\_\_ aware of the danger.  
A. were                      B. was                      C. is                      D. has been
13. \_\_\_\_\_ moved to that city recently.  
A. A number of people have              B. The number of people has been  
C. A number of people has              D. The number of people have
14. Each of the reference \_\_\_\_\_ available in the school library.  
A. books on that list is              B. books on that list are  
C. book on that list is              D. book on that list are
15. Several \_\_\_\_\_ sleeping under a tree.  
A. of lions were              B. lion was              C. of the lions was              D. lions were
16. Everyone who \_\_\_\_\_ a ticket should be in this line.  
A. don't purchase              B. doesn't purchase  
C. hasn't purchased              D. haven't purchased
17. The quality of these recordings \_\_\_\_\_ very good.  
A. is not                      B. are not                      C. were not                      D. have not been
18. Either you or I \_\_\_\_\_ wrong.  
A. am                      B. is                      C. are                      D. were
19. As we walked through the jungle, the \_\_\_\_\_ unusually quiet.  
A. monkeys were              B. monkeys was              C. monkey were              D. monkey was
20. At the news conference, several reporters didn't get clear answers to \_\_\_\_\_ questions.  
A. theirs                      B. their                      C. his and hers                      D. his and her
21. Either of the buses \_\_\_\_\_ past the university.  
A. go                      B. goes                      C. have gone                      D. are going
22. The development of new crops strains \_\_\_\_\_ greatly increased yields.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. has                      D. have
23. The captain as well as all the passengers \_\_\_\_\_ very frightened by the strange noise.  
A. was                      B. have                      C. were                      D. have been
24. If anyone \_\_\_\_\_ tell him I'll be back later.  
A. was calling              B. called                      C. call                      D. calls
25. Every student \_\_\_\_\_ willing to join the picnic now.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. was                      D. were
26. Neither my gloves nor my hat \_\_\_\_\_ with this dress.  
A. is going                      B. are going                      C. goes                      D. go
27. A car's performance, together with its price, \_\_\_\_\_ the decision to purchase.  
A. are affecting              B. affect                      C. have affected              D. affects
28. The film star, with his friends, are going to the party tonight.  
A                      B                      C                      D



**Select the correct answer:**

1. Most of the sand (is - are) wet from the high tide.
2. Most of the students (takes - take) classes after 2:00.
3. Three-quarters of the students (is - are) against the tuition hike.
4. Thirty percent of the TV programming (consists - consist) of commercials.
5. Some of the food (appears - appear) to be contaminated.
6. The books from the library (needs - need) to be returned by Friday.
7. The famous singer and compose (has - have) arrived.
8. My friends who are in the band (wants - want) me to play a musical instrument.
9. That pair of trousers (looks - look) good on you.
10. Your trousers (needs - need) to be cleaned.
11. The price of these jeans (is - are) reasonable.
12. Either Matilda or her brothers (uses - use) the symphony tickets each week.
13. Either the two kittens or the puppy (sits - sit) in my lap while I watch television.
14. Neither the children nor their mother (wants - want) to leave the park now.
15. Neither the leader and his men (was - were) happy with the new schedule.
16. Two sheep (is - are) walking on the road.
17. When the cat is away the mice (is - are) at play.
18. The police (is - are) at the door.
19. Mumps (is - are) not common among adults.
20. Mathematics (has - have) always been my strongest subject.
21. Athletics (provides - provide) important opportunities for physical development.
22. Twenty minutes (is - are) a short time.
23. These twenty minutes (is - are) passing slowly.
24. A number of people (was - were) sitting on the grass.
25. Unfortunately, the number of car crashes (is - are) not going down.
29. *Hansel and Gretel* (is - are) a famous children's story.
30. Hansel and Gretel (is - are) left alone in the woods by their father and captured by a dark witch in a candy house.
31. Both the famous singer and composer (has - have) arrived.
32. The mayor and the governor (hopes - hope) that the bill will soon become a law.
33. Not only the Smiths but also Tonya (has - have) agreed to stay.
34. The Smiths, along with Tonya, (hopes - hope) to have more fun.
35. My dog Floyd, together with Buster the cat, (likes - like) to play in the garden.
36. Gold, as well as platinum, (has - have) recently risen in price.
37. My hair (is - are) clean.
38. Some blonde hairs (is - are) on your jacket.
39. There (is - are) time to watch the movie.



40. There (is - are) four players on each team.
41. There (is - are) a tournament at the end of the season.
42. Each of us (plans - plan) to give a report.
43. Everyone (needs - need) time to relax.
44. All people (needs - need) time to relax and recharge.
45. The poor (is - are) despised even by their neighbours, while the rich (has - have) many "friends."
46. The disabled (needs - need) jobs employment, education, facilities and care centres in urban areas but there (is - are) a shortage of funds.
47. Music is a medium which (is - are) able to convey meaning and value.
48. Social media, which (is - are) based on web-based, mobile based or cloud based technologies have created wonders as far as accessibility is concerned.
49. There (has - have) to be some people left in that town after yesterday's flood.
50. There (continues - continue) to be much research to add new elements.
51. There (remains - remain) problems to be solved.
52. Collecting match-boxes (is - are) one of his favourite pastimes.
53. Good news usually (travels - travel) fast.
54. The injured (is - are) being helped.
55. The wounded in wartime (is - are) supported by the Red Cross.
56. John, along with twenty friends, (is - are) planning a party.
57. Mr. Jones, accompanied by several members of the committee, (have - has) proposed some changes of the rules.
58. A number of reporters (was - were) at the conference yesterday.
59. A pair of jeans (was - were) in the washing machine this morning.
60. The number of students who have withdrawn from class this quarter (is - are) appalling.

### VÀI GHI CHÚ

	SUBJECT	VERB	EXAMPLES
1	các môn học	singular	mathematics, physics
2	một số bệnh	singular	measles, mumps
3	the poor, the rich, the deaf, the blind, the disabled, the wounded, the injured	plural	- The poor <b>are</b> being helped. - All the injured <b>were</b> rushed to the hospital.
4	a number of	plural	A number of pupils <b>were</b> late.
5	the number of	singular	The number of pupils <b>is</b> 50.
6	trousers, jeans	plural	My trousers <b>are</b> ...
7	a pair of trousers	singular	A pair of trousers <b>is</b> ...



8	phân số, phần trăm	singular or plural	-Two-thirds of students <b>are</b> ... -50 per cent of the money <b>is</b> ...
9	neither... nor either... or not only... but also	singular hay plural tùy theo Subject sau	- Neither he nor his sons <b>agree</b> with my decision. - Either you or he <b>is</b> wrong.
10	as well as, with, along with, together with, accompanied by	singular hay plural tùy theo Subject trước	- Jenny as well as her parents <b>is</b> at home today. - The students together with the teacher <b>are</b> working hard.
11	everybody, everyone, everything, anybody, anyone, anything, somebody, someone, something, nobody, no one, nothing	singular	- Everyone <b>knows</b> this. - Something <b>is</b> missing.
12	Nhan đề tác phẩm, tên tổ chức, cơ quan	singular	<i>One Hundred Miles is</i> my favourite song.
13	Phân số và phần trăm	singular hay plural tùy danh từ theo sau	- Two-fifths of the <u>vineyard</u> <b>was</b> destroyed by fire. - Forty percent of the <u>students</u> <b>are</b> present.
14	Một đại lượng	singular	Two thousand dollars <b>is</b> a very large sum of money.
15	many a + singular noun	singular	Many a student <b>was</b> late.

## Bài 39

# PARALLELISM

The balance between two or more similar words, phrases or clauses is called **parallelism** in grammar. Parallelism is also called **parallel structure** or **parallel construction**. Parallel construction prevents awkwardness, promotes clarity and improves writing style and readability.



1. (Đề thi ĐH-CĐ Khối D - 2007):  
We admire Lucy for her intelligence, cheerful disposition and she is honest.  
A B C D
2. (Đề thi ĐH-CĐ Khối D - 2008):  
Helen likes to listen to music, to go to the cinema, to chat on the phone and going shopping.  
A B C D
3. (Đề thi ĐH Khối D - 2010):  
The team leader demanded from his team members a serious attitude towards work, good team spirit, and that they work hard.  
A B C D
4. (Đề thi ĐH Khối D - 2011):  
The first important requirements for you to become a mountain climber are your strong passion and you have good health.  
A B C D
5. (Đề thi ĐH Khối D - 2012):  
The Oxford English Dictionary is well known for including many different meanings of words and to give real examples.  
A B C D
6. (Đề thi ĐH Khối D - 2014):  
All of the students in this course will be assessed according to their attendance, performance, and they work hard.  
A B C D
7. Since January this year, Joe has suffered two injuries, one to his ankle and the other in New York.  
A B C D

## PRACTICE

*Improve the following sentences with the use of proper parallel construction  
(Correct the faulty parallelism in the following sentences)*

1. Driving will get you there more quickly than to walk.
2. Either you will begin to study now or risk failing the exam.
3. We have no doubt about her care and interest in the proposal.
4. My income is smaller than my wife.
5. The teacher not only wants his students to keep quiet but also to do the task.
6. Mary wanted to paint her office, to add some new draperies, and the carpet need cleaning.



7. Learning a new language as an adult is more difficult than to learn one as a child.
8. It is necessary that we tighten our belts and to try to control our spending.
9. Part of the scene is not only concerned with the present situation but also prepares the way for the important scene that follows.
10. A pet not only gives an elderly person something to care for, but also a sense of usefulness.
11. It is easier to love humanity as a whole than loving one's neighbor.
12. What we say and the things that we do seem somehow out of joint.
13. Emily always wants to stay up for the late show but always fell asleep watching it.
14. There are trains leaving the station in the morning and noon.
15. Either you can join the army or the navy.
16. He was a good lecturer, a kind man, and he worked hard.
17. Fred supports the idea because, first, its simplicity; second, it is unique.
18. Her excuses bothered me more than she was absent.
19. We can speak specific or generally, whichever you prefer.
20. I spent time listening and laughing at his talk show.
21. He prefers a sandwich to eating a full meal.
22. Jack is not only good-natured but you can rely on him.
23. The Biology class and the class about history are my favorites.
24. Every morning of our vacation, it either rained or there was snow.
25. The playful dog and the cat that was aggressive didn't get along well.
26. Miss America contestants must be religious, talented, and show patriotism.
27. When I saw my roommate with my girl friend, I felt worried, angry, and embarrassment as well.
28. Mark is not only talented as a pianist but also at acting.
29. When you see an opportunity, one should take advantage of it.
30. When the game ended, the fans rush onto the field.
31. She doesn't like washing clothes or housework.
32. Despite America's affluence, many people are without jobs, on welfare, and have a lot of debts.
33. The puppy stood up slowly, wagged its tail, blinking its eyes, and barked.
34. The chief of police demanded from his assistants an orderly investigation, a well-written report, and that they work hard.
35. Slowly and with care, the museum director removed the Ming vase from the shelf and placed on the display pedestal.
36. Rita's responsibilities include sorting the mail, answering the phone, and to run errands.
37. We have asked managers to reduce travel budgets by 20 percent and that expense reports should be submitted weekly.
38. William is a boy with the best intentions and who has the highest principles.



39. Boy Scouts at the camp can learn cooking, canoeing, swimming, or how to make ropes.
40. The hurricane not only destroyed the fishing fleet but also the homes of the fishermen.
41. Miss America contestants must be religious, talented, and show patriotism.
42. Mark is not only talented as a pianist but also at acting.

## Bài 40

# REDUNDANCY

---

**Redundancy** means superfluity  
or using words unnecessarily or using words for a second time.

1. (Đề thi ĐH Khối D - 2007)  
In my opinion, I think this book is more interesting than the other one.  
A B C D
2. (Đề thi ĐH Khối D - 2010)  
In my judgment, I think Hem is the best physicist among the scientists of  
the SEA region.  
A B C D
3. (Đề thi ĐH Khối D - 2012)  
When you are writing or speaking English it is important to use language that  
includes both men and women equally the same.  
A B C D
4. (Đề thi ĐH Khối D - 2013)  
Globally and internationally, the 1990's stood out as the warmest decade in th  
the history of weather records.  
A B C D
5. (Đề thi ĐH Khối D - 2014)  
Most of the students are queuing in lines waiting to enter the classroom.  
A B C D
6. (Đề thi ĐH Khối A1 - 2014)  
These exercises look easy, but they are very relatively difficult for us.  
A B C D



**EXERCISE**

*In the following sentences cross out anything  
that is unnecessarily wordy or redundant*

1. Why do you want to go there for?
2. We have booked five tickets in advance for the movie.
3. We presented the chief guest with a bouquet of flowers.
4. We reached at Singapore at about four o'clock.
5. Please don't mention about it again.
6. Advance planning can avoid destruction of a historical site.
7. The customers entered into the shop.
8. Her handbag was square in shape.
9. Write answers to the following questions given below.
10. Let's discuss about the film.
11. Fruit at Winn Dixie may be cheaper in cost than fruit at Publix, but it is of poorer quality.
12. The two twins go everywhere together.
13. My parents are coming to visit me on this Sunday.
14. How long does it take for you to reach your school?
15. The engineer explained his new innovation at the national conference.
43. If all of us cooperate together, we will succeed.
44. I find coffee so tasty and delicious that I have difficulty limiting myself to one cup a day.
45. The three brothers had nothing in common with each other.
46. He went into the country last week and returned back yesterday.
47. They followed after him, but could not overtake him.
48. He descended down the steps to the cellar.
49. I hope you will return again soon.
50. Whenever I ride in the cars I always find it prejudicial (có hại) to my health.
51. Besides my uncle and aunt there was also my grandfather at the church.
52. Moreover, we also wish to say he was in error.
53. It is not long ago since he was here.
54. Because we were tired, we therefore stopped for the night.
55. I woke up out of sleep at 6:30 a.m. this morning, but then turned off the alarm and went back to sleep.
56. Using her money, she purchased a large-type desk.
57. Omar and I, we returned back to the hometown where we both grew up.
58. Our usual custom is to meet on Sunday evenings.
59. Did armed gunmen surround the foreign bank?
60. Can you warn me in advance if anyone is coming?
61. One of the dinosaurs in the exhibit is 100,000 years old in age.
62. The other students couldn't help from laughing at the girl with the ugly shirt.



63. My neighbors are not only happier but also richer as well.
64. It is advisable that you'd better try to gather as much information as possible.
65. The carpenter (thợ mộc) joined the two beams together with long nails.
66. After Jill had shown Tim how to insert paper once, she repeated the operation again.
67. The twins have the same identical birthmarks (vết bớt) on their backs.
68. I think we have sufficient enough information to write the report.
69. The mountain climbers proceeded forward on their long trek up the side of the mountain. (trek [n.] = a journey on foot)
70. Rita and her sister competed together in the musical talent show.
71. I think that we should come up with a new innovation for doing this job.
72. My cousins love to play with the two twins from across the street.
73. It is very unusual to find someone who has never told a deliberate (cố ý) lie on purpose.
74. These curtains are shorter in length than those.
75. It's a true fact that the speed of light is 299,792,458 meters per second.

## Bài 41

### MỘT SỐ MẪU CÂU

# HỘI THOẠI CĂN BẢN

---

#### 1. Tên:

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| What's your name?     | My name is John. / I'm John.                             |
| What's his name?      | His name is John. / He's John.                           |
| What are their names? | Their names are Mary and Jane.<br>They're Mary and Jane. |

#### 2. Tuổi:

- |                   |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| How old are you?  | I'm seventeen (years old) |
| How old is she?   | She's 16 (years old)      |
| How old are they? | They're 12 (years old)    |
- He died at the age of 82.  
I have a daughter your age (My daughter is the same age as you).  
Tom is the same age as Tom. Tom and Paul are the same age.  
Susan is three years younger than Betty.



**3. Ngày sinh, nơi sinh:**

When were you born? I was born in 1979.  
 Where were you born? I was born in Saigon.  
 When and where was Shakespeare born?  
 He was born at Straford-upon-Avon in 1564.  
 Jack London (1876-1916).  
 = Jack London was born in 1876 and died in 1916.

**4. Sinh nhật:**

When's your birthday? My birthday is December 15th.  
 It's in December.

**5. Quê quán, xuất thân (từ đâu đến):**

Where are you from? I'm from Long An.  
 Where do you come from? I come from Long An.  
 Where is she from? She's from London.  
 Where does she come from? She comes from London.

**6. Nghề nghiệp:**

What's your job? I'm a teacher. / I teach.  
 What's your occupation? I makes shoes. / I'm a shoe-maker.  
 What are you? I work in a hospital.  
 I work as a reporter.  
 I earn my living by singing.  
 What is his father? He is a tailor.

**7. Mô tả:**

What was the exam like? It was very difficult.  
 What was the weather like? It was very windy.  
 What's the food like in your hostel? It's quite good.  
 + *Hỏi về ngoại hình hoặc tính cách con người:*  
 What is he?  
 He's short and fat and wears glasses. / He's a very talkative, friendly man.  
 + *Chỉ hỏi về ngoại hình con người:*  
 What does she look like?  
 She is tall and glamorous. / She looks like a film star.

**8. Địa chỉ:**

What's your address? My address is 30 Quang Trung Street.  
 Where do you live? It's 30 Quang Trung Street.  
 I live at 30 Quang Trung Street.

**9. Thời gian:**

What time is it? It's nine o'clock.  
 What's the time? It's nine thirty (half past nine)  
 What o'clock is it? It's quarter past four. (4.15).



How about the time? It's quarter to six. (5.45)

It's time to go. (*Đến giờ phải đi rồi*)

We had the good time at the circus. (*Chúng tôi đã xem xiếc rất vui*)

I had a hard time getting here. (*Tôi đã phải vất vả lắm mới tới đây được*)

#### 10. Thời tiết:

What's the weather like today? - It's lovely.

What was the weather like yesterday? - It was hot.

What's the weather like in Canada? - It's cold.

Was it cold yesterday? - Yes, it was. - No, it wasn't.

*rainy*: có mưa

*foggy*: có sương mù

*sunny*: có nắng

*windy*: lộng gió

*mild*: ôn hòa

*cloudy*: có nhiều mây

*wet*: ẩm ướt

*stormy*: có bão

#### 11. Ngày thứ mấy trong tuần:

What day is today? - Today's Monday / It's Monday.

What day of the week is it? - It's Monday.

What day was yesterday? - Yesterday was Sunday. / It was Sunday.

#### 12. Mừng mấy trong tháng:

What day of the month is it? Today is the June 4th.

What date is it (today)? Today's date is the 4th of June.

What's the date? It's June 4th.

It's the 4th of June.

The 4th.

#### 13. Ngày tháng (năm)/ (ngày) tháng năm:

What's the date (today)?

It's April 24 (1995)

When was the date of the battle of Waterloo?

June 1815.

#### 14. Màu sắc:

What colour is the hat? / What colour is it? It's brown.

What colour are the pens? / What colour are they? They're red.

#### 15. Có:

How many people are there in this room? There are forty-five.

How much money is there in the safe? There is a lot.

Is there a shower in your flat? Yes, there is / No, there isn't.

I'm looking for a lighter. Have you got it? / Do you have it?

Yes, I have / No, I haven't.

*Xác định:*

ANH: I've got some money. / I have some money.



MỸ (văn nói): I've got some money.

MỸ (văn viết): I have some money.

*Phủ định và nghi vấn:*

ANH + MỸ: We don't have much time. Do you have enough money?

ANH : We haven't got much time. Have you got enough money?

ANH : We haven't much time. Have you enough money?

## 16. Giá cả:

How much? (*Hỏi vẫn tất. Món hàng được hiểu nhờ mạch văn*).

How much is it? / How much is this? / How much is this coat?

How much are they? / How much are these coats?

How much does it cost? / How much does this coat cost?

How much do they cost? / How much do these coats cost?

What's the price? / What's the price of this coat?

It's 5,000 dong. / It costs 5,000 dong.

The costs are 5,000 dong each.

## 17. Kích thước:

How long (wide / deep / high...) is it?

It's 5 metres long (wide / deep / high...).

What's the length (width / depth / height...)

It's 5 metres in length. (width / depth/ height...)

a dolphin six feet long = a dolphin six feet in length.

My house is the same size as yours.

My house and yours are the same size.

## 18. Trang phục:

What size do you want/take? Ông bà muốn mua cỡ nào?

What size are you? Ông bà (mang/đi/...) cỡ nào?

Size five and a half. Cỡ 5.5.

Size five shoes Đôi giày cỡ 5

A size seven hat Chiếc mũ cỡ 7

A size smaller Cỡ nhỏ hơn một số.

Two sizes larger Cỡ lớn hơn hai số

## 19. Trọng lượng:

How much do you weigh? I weigh 191 pounds.

How much does it weigh? It weighs 50 kilos.

What is your weight? My weight is 50 kilos..

What is its weight? Its weight is 6 pounds.

## 20. Tốc độ:

How fast is your car? It's 90 miles an hour.

How fast is it? (mph = miles per hour)

What's its speed? (kph = kilometers per hour)



**21. Mất bao lâu:**

How long does it take him to write a letter?

It takes him about two hours to write a letter.

My mother spends a lot of time (in) doing her housework.

**22. Bao lâu:**

How long have you lived here? - Oh, for 20 years.

I'm going to London. How long for? - Just for two days.

How often do you go out? - Oh, not often... Once or twice a week.

**23. Của ai:**

Whose car is it? / Whose car is this? It's mine (hers, his, ours....).

It's Mr. Smith's (car).

Whose pens are they? / Whose pens are these?

They're mine (hers, ours,...)

Who does this house belong to? It belongs to me. / It's mine.

It's my uncle's.

**24. Ý thích:**

I like

I am fond of

I am interested in

I enjoy / I love

I feel like / my hobby is

My (great) passion is

I don't mind

+ V-ing

Ex.

I like going for a walk after dinner.

He is fond of singing.

Faraday was interested in reading books on science.

She doesn't mind cooking but she is bored with washing dishes.

My great passion in life is studying.

George's hobby is collecting stamps.

**25. Không thích:**

I don't like

I dislike

I hate

I detest

I am bored with

I'm fed up with

I can't stand

I'm tired of

I have enough of

+ V-ing



Ex.

I don't like getting up early.

Why does he detest writing letters?

I have enough of eating the same things over and over during the week.

What are your likes and dislikes? (*Bạn ưa và ghét những gì?*)

## 26. Có thể = Biết làm:

Can you swim? / Do you know how to swim? (*Bạn biết bơi không?*)

Would you mind showing me how to operate the lift?

## 27. Mời:

Would you like some coffee? -Yes, please.

- No, thanks.

Would you like to go to the cinema with me? -Yes, I'd like to.

- Yes, I'd love to.

How about a dinner tonight?

Oh, what a pity. I'm busy today. Another time, perhaps.

## 28. Yêu cầu:

Open the door, please.

Will/would/can/could you open the door, please (?)

Would you mind opening the door, please (?) – Not at all.

Could you bring me some more tea, please.

Can you show me some new books, please.

Will you take me to the airport, please.

Would you tell me the news, please.

I'd like a pair of shoes, please.

I'd like the menu, please.

I'd like some wine, please.

A cup of tea, please.

## 29. Xin phép:

May I go out?

May I ask you some questions?

Can I read your newspaper?

Could I borrow your bicycle?

## 30. Cáo lỗi:

+ *Trước khi làm phiền ai:* Excuse me, what's the time now?

Excuse me..... (*xin lỗi*)

Yes? (*gì cơ ạ?*)

Have you got any change?

+ *Sau khi phạm lỗi:* I'm sorry, I'm late.

Trả lời: Never mind (*Không sao*)

It doesn't matter.

All right/ that's all right.

Don't worry (about it).



**31. Cảm ơn:**

Thank you.                      Thank you very much.  
Thanks.                         Thanks a lot.  
Many thanks.                 Thanks for your help.  
It's very kind (nice/good/...) of you (+ to V)  
It was nice of you to give me the present. Thank you.  
*Trả lời:*     You're welcome. (*Không có chi*)  
                    That's all right.  
                    Forget it.  
                    Don't mention it.

**32. Khen / chê:**

It was very kind of you to help me. (*khen*)  
It was careless of you to leave the window open. (*chê*)

**33. Tỏ ý muốn giúp:**

Shall I carry that case for you?  
Can I help you?  
Can I take you home?

**34. Đề nghị, rủ nhau:**

Let's have a picnic lunch.                      Let's not talk in class.  
Shall we go for a walk now.                      How about going for a walk?  
I suggest going for a coffee.                      That's a good idea.

**35. Khuyến:**

You'd better go to bed early.                      You'd better not overwork.  
You should go to bed early.                      You ought to read this book.  
I advise you to stop drinking.                      I'd advise you to see a doctor.  
If I were you, I'd sell this car.                      Why don't you sell that car?

**36. Đồng ý/ không đồng ý:**

I think so    I don't think so.  
That's right.    Exactly!  
You're completely mistaken.

**37. Xin nhắc lại:**

- Are you English?  
- *Pardon?*

**38. Hỏi đường:**

Where is the post office?  
Please show me the way to the post office.  
                    (tell)  
Can you tell me where the supermarket is, please?



**39. Tại sao:**

- I'm going to rob a bank next week.  
*Why?*
- I can't do that.  
*Why not?*

**40. Hy vọng:**

- Will it be fine tomorrow?  
*I hope so.*
- Will it rain tomorrow?  
*I hope not.*

**41. Nhận lời đồng ý:**

- Can you lend me some money?
- OK / All right / Certainly / Of course / Sure / No problem.

**42. Ngạc nhiên:**

- Really? (*Thế à?*)
- What a surprise! (*Ngạc nhiên quá*)
- How strange! / It's strange. (*Lạ thật*)
- Oh, dear. (*Trời ơi*)

**43. Giới thiệu:**

- *Margaret:* Mr. Wilson, this is Miss Blake.
- *Wilson:* How do you do.
- *Linda Blake:* How do you do.
- May I introduce myself, Peter Harvey.
- Mrs. Jones, I 'd like to introduce you to Miss Fraser.
- (I'm) glad to meet you. / Nice to meet you/ Pleased to meet you.

**44. Tạm biệt:**

- I'm sorry, I can't stay.      I must go. I'm late.
- Bye.      Good bye.
- So long.      Good night.
- See you later.      See you tomorrow.
- See you at 6 o'clock.      Come and see you again soon.

**45. Hỏi thăm để thông cảm:**

- What's wrong? / What's the trouble?
- What's happened?
- What's the matter (with you)? You look tired.
- Is anything wrong? You don't look well.
- Is anything the matter?
- I've got a terrible headache.
- Oh, I'm sorry to that. (*Ôi, tội nghiệp*)
- Is there anything I can do (to help) ?



**46. Chúc mừng:**

- Congratulations!
- Congratulations on your new job.  
your exam results.  
your new baby.
- Congratulations! I hope you'll be very happy.
- I'm (so) happy (to hear) about that.  
pleased  
delighted
- That's great / fantastic / marvelous.

**47. Đổi đề tài:**

- Oh, by the way, there is the telephone message for you.
- Oh, incidentally, there is the telephone message for you.  
(*Này, có tin nhắn qua điện thoại cho anh đây*)

**48. Điện thoại:**

- Who's (that) speaking? This is Mark (speaking).
- Susan speaking. Could I talk to Bob, please?
- Could I (Can I) speak to Mr. Langdon, please?
- Hang on (Hold on) while I get him.

**49. Các tình huống khác:**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| - Just a minute.                                    | One moment, please.                    |
| - I have no idea. ( <i>Tôi không biết</i> )         | I see / I know.                        |
| - Here you are. ( <i>Đây ạ</i> ).                   | Here it is.                            |
| - Are you sure?                                     | What do you mean?                      |
| - It's me. ( <i>Tôi đây</i> ).                      | Yes, sir. / Yes, madam.                |
| - Me, too. ( <i>Cả tôi nữa</i> )                    | No, sir. / No, madam.                  |
| - Who? Me?  | Wait! ( <i>Khoan đã</i> )              |
| - What make is it? ( <i>Nó hiệu gì?</i> )           | Quick! ( <i>Mau lên !</i> )            |
|   | Hurry up!                              |
| - As soon as possible.                              | Look! ( <i>Xem đây, nhìn kìa</i> )     |
| - As soon as you can.                               | Look out! ( <i>Coi chừng</i> )         |
| - And then? ( <i>Sau đó thì sao?</i> )              | Oh, dear!                              |
| - Who's that? Who is it?                            | I'm afraid... ( <i>Tôi e rằng...</i> ) |
| - Of course not. ( <i>Dĩ nhiên là không</i> )       |  |
| - Are you married? ( <i>Bạn có gia đình chưa?</i> ) |  |
| - How did you go? ( <i>Bạn đi bằng gì?</i> )        |  |
| - I went by car by taxi by train by plane           |  |
| by ship on foot on horseback.                       |  |



# Bài 42

## PREPOSITIONS

❖ **Liệt kê các giới từ:** *on, upon, in, at, by, with, from, to, between, among, without, against, into, within, off, out of, as, since, till, until, after, before, along, in front of, above, under, below, behind, beyond, opposite, inside, beside, near, next to, over, during, through, across, except, but, toward(s)...*

❖ **Các dạng kết hợp:**

1- Prep. + Noun	: <i>by car</i>
2- Adj. + Prep.	: <i>rich in</i>
3- Participle + Prep.	: <i>occupied with</i>
4- Verb + Prep.	: <i>look for</i>
5- Prep. + Noun + Prep.	: <i>in danger of</i>

❖ **Khi làm bài tập:**

+ Cần phải đọc kỹ câu để phân biệt các dạng kết hợp trên đây.

a) She was waiting \_\_\_\_\_ her son.  
(*Đáp án: for* – kết hợp **Verb + Prep.**)

b) She was waiting \_\_\_\_\_ her room  
(*Đáp án: in* – kết hợp **Prep. + Noun**)

+ Cần phải theo mạch văn để chọn giới từ thích hợp.

a) He is good \_\_\_\_\_ chess. (*Đáp án: at*)

b) Running is good \_\_\_\_\_ you. (*Đáp án: for*)

## TỪ ĐIỂN MINI VỀ GIỚI TỪ

### A

**absent from:** vắng mặt

**absorbed in:** say mê

**absorption in:** say mê

**be about to:** sắp làm gì

**acceptable to sb.:** có thể chấp nhận đối với ai

**access to:** tiếp cận với...

**accessible to:** dễ tiếp cận đối với...

**by accident:** tình cờ, không cố ý

**according to:** theo lời...

**account for:** giải thích cho cái gì, là nguyên nhân gây nên cái gì

**take into account:** xem xét

**accuse sb. of:** cáo buộc ai về việc gì

**be accustomed to:** quen với (= **be used to**)

**be acquainted with:** quen ai, quen biết, không phải người xa lạ

**add sth. to sth.:** thêm cái gì vào cái gì

**in addition to:** thêm vào, ngoài...



**in advance:** trước (về thời gian)  
**take advantage of:** lợi dụng  
**have an affect on:** ảnh hưởng đến, tác động đến  
**at the age of:** ở tuổi (15, 20...)  
**(un)afraid of:** (không) sợ  
**agree with sb.:** đồng ý với ai  
**agree with/about/on sth.:** đồng ý về...  
**agreeable to / agreeable to:** tán thành, nhất trí, đồng ý về việc gì  
**ahead of:** trước (về không gian cũng như thời gian)  
**aim at / aim + to-V:** nhằm, nhắm đến  
**all at once = all of a sudden**  
**all of a sudden:** bất thình lình, đột nhiên (= **suddenly, all at once**)  
**above all:** quan trọng hơn cả, trên hết  
**at all:** không hề (cụm từ để nhấn mạnh ý phủ định: *I have no money at all*)  
**angry with/at sb. for doing sth.:** giận ai vì người ấy đã làm việc gì  
**angry about/at sth.:** giận vì chuyện gì  
**give an answer to the question:** trả lời câu hỏi (xin xem thêm *response, solution, key*)  
**anxious about:** lo lắng về...  
**apart from:** ngoài, trừ (= **besides, other than**)  
**apologize to sb. for sth.:** xin lỗi ai về...  
**apply for:** làm đơn xin gì  
**apply to:** làm đơn nộp cho ai  
**on arriving:** khi đến (nơi)  
**on (my) arrival:** khi (tôi) đến (nơi)  
**arrive in:** đến nơi (những nơi rộng lớn như thành phố, tiểu bang, quốc gia)  
**arrive at:** đến nơi (những nơi nhỏ hơn thành phố như phi trường, nhà ga, trường học)  
**as for:** về (= **as to, concerning, about, with regard to, regarding**)  
**as to = as for**  
**ashamed of sb./sth.:** hổ thẹn về ai, về việc gì

**ashamed for sb.:** hổ thẹn thay cho ai  
**ask about:** hỏi về...  
**ask (sb.) for sth.:** xin (ai) cái gì  
**ask sth. of sb.:** xin ai cái gì  
**pay attention to:** chú ý đến  
**attitude towards sb./sth.:** thái độ đối với...  
**attracted to:** bị thu hút bởi  
**available at / in:** có sẵn ở đâu  
**available for sb./sth.:** có sẵn cho...  
**on average:** tính bình quân, theo mức trung bình  
**aware of:** biết, ý thức về... (= **conscious of**)

## B

**bad at:** tồi tệ, không giỏi việc gì  
**based on:** dựa trên  
**bear (sth.) in mind:** ghi nhớ cái gì  
**because of:** vì...  
**become of:** ra sao, xảy ra (dùng trong câu hỏi như: *What will become of the children if their father dies?* hoặc *I don't know what has become of him?*)  
**on behalf of sb.:** thay mặt ai, vì ích lợi của ai  
**go to bed:** đi ngủ  
**lie in bed:** nằm trên giường  
**stay in bed:** ở lại giường, dưỡng bệnh  
**believe in:** tin vào ai, cái gì  
**belief in:** niềm tin vào ai, cái gì  
**belong to:** thuộc về...  
**benefit from:** hưởng lợi nhờ...  
**give birth to:** sinh ra, đẻ ra  
**bit by bit:** dần dần, từng chút (= **little by little, step by step, gradually**)  
**blame sb. for sth.:** trách mắng ai về...  
**a book (film, novel, play...) by:** một cuốn sách (phim, tiểu thuyết, vở kịch) của...  
**a book (film, novel, play) about/on:** một cuốn sách (phim, tiểu thuyết, vở kịch...) nói về...



**bored with:** buồn, chán vì...  
**borrow sth. from sb.:** mượn, vay gì của ai  
**break down:** phá hủy (nhà, tường), suy sụp (tâm lý), hư (xe)  
**break into:** đột nhập  
**break out:** bộc phát, bùng nổ, rời khỏi  
**out of breath:** hụt hơi, hết hơi  
**bring about:** đem lại, gây nên  
**bring up:** dưỡng dục  
**bump into = run into**  
**on business:** đi làm, đi công tác  
**busy with:** bận việc gì

## C

**call for:** đòi hỏi, yêu cầu  
**call on:** thăm  
**capable of:** có khả năng làm việc gì  
**care about:** quan tâm  
**care for:** chăm sóc, yêu mến  
**take care of:** chăm sóc  
**in case:** phòng trường hợp, phòng khi  
**in case of:** trong trường hợp, nếu  
**catch sight of:** thoáng nhìn thấy  
**catch up with:** bắt kịp, theo kịp (xem **keep up with**)  
**carry out:** thực hiện, thi hành  
**in the centre / center of:** ở trung tâm (= **in the middle of**)  
**certain about/of:** chắc chắn về...  
**by chance:** tình cờ, ngẫu nhiên  
**in charge of / take charge of:** chịu trách nhiệm, phụ trách  
**check in:** làm thủ tục lên máy bay, đăng ký vào khách sạn  
**cheer up:** làm cho vui lên, làm vui buồn phiền  
**at the cinema:** ở rạp chiếu bóng  
**clever at:** khéo, giỏi về việc gì  
**close to:** gần với  
**with flying colours:** một cách xuất sắc  
**come about:** xảy ra (= **happen**)  
**come across sb. / sth.:** tình cờ gặp

**come from:** đến từ, xuất thân từ...  
**come round / come around = come to**  
**come to:** tỉnh lại, hồi tỉnh  
**come to an end:** chấm dứt, kết thúc  
**come up to:** đến gần, lại gần  
**come up with:** nghĩ ra, phát kiến  
**communicate sth. to sb.:** truyền thông/truyền đạt điều gì cho ai  
**communicate with sb.:** giao tiếp với ai  
**compare A with B:** so sánh A với B (để tìm sự tương đồng, dị biệt)  
**compare A to B:** ví von A giống như B (Ex. *Women are compared to roses due to their beauty and thorns*)  
**by comparison:** nếu so sánh, khi đối chiếu với...  
**in comparison with:** nếu so sánh với, khi đối chiếu với...  
**be composed of = consist of**  
**be comprised of = consist of**  
**on computer:** trên máy tính  
**concentrate on:** tập trung vào... (= **focus on**)  
**concerned about/for:** quan tâm về, lo lắng về...  
**in conclusion:** để kết luận  
**confide in sb./sth.:** tâm sự (chuyện bí mật) với ai, tin tưởng ai/cái gì  
**confident of:** tin tưởng, tin cậy...  
**confused about:** nhầm lẫn, bối rối về...  
**congratulate sb. on sth.:** chúc mừng ai về việc gì  
**congratulations (on):** chúc mừng (về)  
**conscious of:** biết, ý thức về...  
**consist of:** gồm, gồm có, bao gồm (= **be composed of, comprise, be comprised of, be made up of**)  
**have contact with:** liên lạc với...  
**contented with:** hài lòng về...  
**on this continent:** trên lục địa này  
**contrary to:** trái với  
**on the contrary:** trái lại, ngược lại  
**in contrast (to):** trái lại



**contribute to:** đóng góp vào...  
**in control of:** nắm quyền kiểm soát  
**out of control:** ngoài tầm kiểm soát  
**under control:** được kiểm soát, trong tầm kiểm soát  
**cope with:** đối phó, đương đầu với...  
**count on sb. / sth.:** cậy nhờ vào...  
**covered with:** được bao phủ (bởi)...  
**crowded with:** đông  
**be a far cry from:** rất khác với (= **be very different from**)  
**cut down on:** cắt giảm

## D

**in danger of:** có nguy cơ bị...  
**have a date with sb.:** hẹn hò với ai  
**out of date:** lỗi thời  
**up to date:** cập nhật  
**deal with:** xử lý, giải quyết  
**in debt:** mắc nợ  
**dedicate sth. to:** cống hiến cái gì  
**dedicated to:** tận tụy với ai, hết lòng về việc gì  
**depend on:** lệ thuộc vào, tùy vào...  
**dependent / dependence on:** lệ thuộc vào, tùy vào...  
**at the desk:** (ngồi, làm việc) ở bàn giấy  
**on the desk:** (sách vở, dụng cụ) trên bàn giấy  
**devote sth. to:** cống hiến cái gì cho...  
**devoted to:** tận tụy với ai, hết lòng về việc gì  
**die down:** (gió) lặng đi, (cơn nóng) dịu đi, (tiếng ồn) lắng xuống  
**die from:** chết vì (*disease, illness, a car accident, a wound, smoking, drinking...*)  
**die of:** chết vì (*cancer, pneumonia, Aids, tuberculosis, a heart attack, hunger...*)  
**on a diet:** ăn kiêng  
**differ / different / difference from / than / to:** khác với...

**differences between A and B:** những khác biệt giữa A và B  
**difficult for:** khó khăn đối với...  
**have difficulty (in)+V-ing:** khó làm gì  
**have difficulty with:** có khó khăn về việc gì  
**with difficulty:** một cách khó khăn (trái nghĩa với **easily, with ease**)  
**disappointed with:** thất vọng về ai, về việc gì  
**to discuss sth.:** thảo luận bàn bạc về việc gì [**không có giới từ**])  
**to have a discussion about/ on/ of sth.:** thảo luận về việc gì  
**dissatisfied with:** không hài lòng, bất mãn với...  
**divide sth. into three parts:** chia cái gì làm ba phần  
**divide sth. among:** chia cho nhiều người  
**divide sth. between:** chia cho 2 người  
**do away with:** trừ khử, hủy bỏ, triệt tiêu (= **get rid of, put an end to**)  
**do one's best:** cố gắng hết sức (= **try one's best, make every effort**)  
**do without:** sống thiếu cái gì, tạm xoay sở để làm việc vì thiếu cái gì  
**drop in:** ghé thăm, tạt vào thăm

## E

**eager about /for/ after:** hăng hái về...  
**with ease:** một cách dễ dàng (= **easily**)  
**at ease:** thoải mái, thư giãn  
**in the east:** ở hướng đông, miền đông  
**eat in:** ăn ở nhà  
**eat out:** ăn tiệm  
**eat up:** ăn hết, chén sạch  
**come to an end:** chấm dứt, kết thúc  
**enough of sth.:** có quá nhiều điều xấu gì rồi, không chịu nổi nữa  
**have enough of sb.:** chán ngấy ai  
**put an end to:** chấm dứt, kết liễu (= **put a stop to, do away with, get rid of**)



in **English**: bằng tiếng Anh  
**entrust** sb. with sth.: giao phó cho ai việc gì  
**equal** to: bằng, bình đẳng với...  
 in the **event** that = **if**  
**for ever / forever**: mãi mãi, vĩnh viễn (= **for good, permanently**)  
 an **examination** in mathematics: bài thi, bài kiểm tra môn toán  
 the **examination** of: cuộc khảo sát về..., việc khám (sức khỏe, mắt...)  
**for example**: ví dụ (= **for instance**)  
**except** (for): ngoại trừ  
**excited** about: phấn khởi, háo hức về...  
**keep an eye on**: trông chừng, trông nom, bảo vệ  
**see eye to eye**: đồng ý, nhất trí, đồng thuận (= **agree, concur**)

## F

**face up to**: nhìn nhận (sự thật phũ phàng)  
**in fact**: thật vậy  
**faithful to**: trung thành với (= **loyal to**)  
**fall behind**: tụt hậu, thua kém  
**fall in love with** sb.: phải lòng ai, bắt đầu yêu ai  
**familiar to** sb.: quen thuộc đối với ai  
**familiar with** sth.: quá quen với cái gì, biết rõ cái gì  
**famous for**: nổi tiếng về...  
**far from**: xa, không  
**find fault with**: bắt lỗi, phê phán  
**in favour of**: thiên về, ưu ái, nghiêng về...  
**fed up with**: chán ngấy về...  
**few and far between**: không thường xuyên, thưa thớt  
**figure out**: hiểu ra, nghĩ ra  
**fill in**: điền vào (đơn, chỗ trống...)  
**filled with**: đầy (= **full of**)  
**on fire**: đang cháy  
**play with fire**: đùa với lửa

**set fire to** sth. / **put sth. on fire**: đốt  
**at first**: lúc đầu, thoạt tiên  
**focus on**: tập trung vào... (= **concentrate on**)  
**fond of**: thích, mến  
**on foot**: bằng chân, đi bộ  
**set foot on**: đặt chân lên  
**free from**: không bị ảnh hưởng bởi... (= **safe from**)  
**on Friday**: vào ngày thứ sáu  
**make friends with**: kết bạn, làm quen  
**friendly with**: thân thiện với  
**full of**: đầy (= **filled with**)  
**make fun of**: chế nhạo, chế giễu (= **laugh at**)  
**furious with**: giận ai (= **angry with**)

## G

**in general**: nói chung, xét tổng quát, (= **on the whole, generally**)  
**get along with** sb.: sống hòa thuận với ai (= **get on with sb.**)  
**get in touch with**: bắt liên lạc với...  
**get off**: xuống xe, xuống ngựa, xuống máy bay  
**get on**: lên xe, lên ngựa, lên máy bay  
**get on one's nerves**: gây phiền, quấy rầy (= **annoy, disturb**)  
**get over**: khỏi bệnh, bình phục  
**get over**: vượt qua, khắc phục (= **overcome**)  
**get rid of**: trừ khử, hủy bỏ, triệt tiêu (= **do away with, put an end to**)  
**give birth to**: sinh ra, đẻ ra  
**give up**: ngừng, thôi (= **stop, quit**)  
**glance at** sb. / sth.: nhìn thoáng qua  
**go after**: đuổi theo, theo sau  
**go ahead**: xảy ra, làm ngay ("**tôi luôn bác tài!**")  
**go along**: tiến triển  
**go away**: đi khỏi, đi nơi khác  
**go back**: trở về, trở lại  
**go by**: trôi qua (thời gian)



**go down:** xuống (giá)  
**go for a walk (a ride):** đi dạo (đánh xe đi một vòng)  
**go in for:** tham gia, tham dự, thích  
**go off:** nổ (bom, súng..), reo (chuông)  
**go on:** - đang diễn ra  
- tiếp tục làm  
**go out:** - (đèn) tắt  
- đi chơi  
**go over:** xem xét kỹ, kiểm tra kỹ  
**go through:** trải qua, dùng cạn  
**go to (school, work, church...):** đi học, đi làm, đi chơi...  
**go up:** lên, tăng (giá)  
**go with:** - đi với  
- cặp bồ  
- hài hoà với  
**go without saying:** đương nhiên, miễn bàn  
**good at:** giỏi, khéo về...  
**good for sb./sth.:** tốt cho ai, cho cái gì  
**for good:** vĩnh viễn, mãi mãi (= **for ever, permanently**)  
**grateful to sb. for sth.:** biết ơn ai về điều gì (= **thankful to sb. for sth.**)  
**guilty of:** có tội gì

## H

**hand in:** nộp (bài)  
**by hand:** bằng tay, thủ công  
**on the other hand:** trái lại, mặt khác  
**hang up:** gác máy, cúp điện thoại  
**harmful to:** có hại cho  
**have to do with:** có liên quan đến  
**hear from:** nghe tin ai  
**hear of:** nghe nói về...  
**by heart:** (học) thuộc lòng  
**with all (one's) heart:** với cả tấm lòng  
**helpful to:** hữu ích cho...  
**hold up:** hoãn lại, cướp  
**feel at home:** cảm thấy mình thuộc về nơi nào đó, cảm thấy mình được mọi người ở nơi nào đó chấp nhận

**Make yourself at home:** Cứ tự nhiên  
**on holiday:** đi nghỉ  
**on horseback:** (đi) bằng ngựa  
**in a hurry:** đang vội

## I

**have no idea of:** không biết  
**important to:** quan trọng đối với...  
**incapable of:** không có khả năng  
**independent/independence from:** độc lập, không lệ thuộc vào...  
**infer from:** suy ra từ...  
**have influence on:** ảnh hưởng đối với...  
**under the influence of:** do ảnh hưởng của...  
**insist on:** cố nài, đòi bằng được  
**in spite of:** tuy, mặc dù  
**for instance:** ví dụ (= **for example**)  
**instead of:** thay vì  
**have interest in / be interested in:** quan tâm đến, thích  
**introduce sb. to sb.:** giới thiệu người này cho người kia  
**involved in:** tham gia, liên quan đến

## J

**in January:** vào tháng giêng  
**jealous of sb./sth.:** ghen tị với ai, ghen tị về cái gì  
**out of job:** thất nghiệp  
**jot down:** ghi vội, ghi nhanh  
**just in time:** đúng giờ, vừa kịp

## K

**keen on:** hăng hái, thích việc gì  
**keep an eye on:** trông chừng, trông nom, bảo vệ  
**keep away from:** tránh, không đến gần  
**keep company with:** giao du với ai  
**keep (sth.) in mind:** ghi nhớ cái gì (= **bear in mind**)  
**keep in touch with:** giữ liên lạc với...



**keep on:** tiếp tục  
**keep pace with:** theo kịp  
**keep up with:** theo kịp, duy trì cùng tốc độ (xem **catch up with**)  
**key to the house:** chìa khóa nhà  
**key to success / key to knowledge:** bí quyết thành công / chìa khóa mở cửa tri thức (xin xem thêm *answer, response, solution*)  
**kind to sb.:** tử tế, tốt với ai  
**It's very kind of you:** Ông tử tế lắm  
**know sb. by sight:** biết mặt ai (nhưng chưa quen lắm)  
**have knowledge of:** biết (= **know**)  
**He is (un)known to us:** Chúng tôi (không) biết ông ta.

## L

**late for:** trễ  
**late in the night / late at night:** khuya  
**laugh at:** chế nhạo, chế giễu (= **make fun of**)  
**lay off:** sa thải, đuổi việc  
**lead to:** dẫn đến (mục đích), gây nên (điều tốt hoặc điều xấu)  
**on the left:** bên trái  
**at least:** ít nhất, ít ra, tối thiểu  
**leave for London:** đi London  
**leave Paris for London:** rời Paris đi London  
**let sb. down:** làm cho ai thất vọng  
**limited to:** giới hạn ở mức...  
**line up:** xếp hàng  
**little by little:** dần dần, từng chút (= **bit by bit, step by step, gradually**)  
**live on (food, money...):** sống bằng (thực phẩm, tiền bạc...)  
**look after:** chăm sóc, trông coi  
**look at:** nhìn  
**look down on:** khinh rẻ, coi thường  
**look for:** tìm  
**look forward to:** mong đợi  
**look into:** xem xét, điều tra

**look like:** trông như  
**look out:** coi chừng (= **watch out**)  
**look out for sb./sth.:** coi chừng ai, coi chừng cái gì (= **watch out for**)  
**look up:** tra cứu (tự điển)  
**look up to:** kính trọng  
**be in love with sb.:** yêu ai  
**fall in love with sb.:** phải lòng ai, bắt đầu yêu ai  
**loyal to = faithful to**

## M

**be made from:** được làm bằng... (vật liệu có pha chế) Ex. *Glass is made from sand.*  
**be made of:** được làm bằng... (vật liệu nguyên vẹn, không pha chế) Ex. *This table is made of wood.*  
**be made up of = consist of**  
**make a point of:** coi trọng việc gì  
**make an effort:** cố gắng  
**make great efforts:** cố gắng nhiều  
**make every effort:** cố gắng hết sức (= **do one's best, try one's best**)  
**make believe:** giả vờ, giả bộ, giả đồ  
**make friends with:** kết bạn, làm quen  
**make fun of:** chế nhạo, chế giễu (= **laugh at**)  
**make out:** hiểu, tiến bộ  
**make room for:** dọn chỗ cho  
**make sense:** có ý nghĩa  
**make up:** trang điểm, bịa ra, bù lại  
**make up for:** bù lại cho...  
**make up one's mind:** quyết định (= **decide**)  
**married to:** kết hôn với ai  
**What's the matter with you:** Anh làm sao vậy?  
**by all means:** tất nhiên, chắc chắn  
**by no means:** không, không hề  
**by means of:** bằng phương tiện  
**in the meantime:** trong khi đó  
**in memory of:** để tưởng nhớ...



in the **middle of**: giữa (= in the **centre/center of**)  
 at **midnight**: lúc nửa đêm  
 bear (sth.) in **mind**: ghi nhớ điều gì  
 keep (sth.) in **mind**: ghi nhớ điều gì  
**mindful of**: chú ý đến, nghĩ đến  
 by **mistake**: do nhầm lẫn  
 at the **moment**: bây giờ (= now)  
 in a **moment**: trong chốc lát  
 on **Monday**: vào ngày thứ Hai  
 once in a blue **moon**: không thường xuyên, ít khi (= **rarely, infrequently**)  
 on the **move**: luôn bận rộn, rất năng động  
 in **movement**: đang chuyển động

## N

at **night**: vào ban đêm  
 late in the night / late at night: khuya  
 on **Monday night**: vào tối thứ Hai  
 in the **name of**: nhân danh ai  
**necessary to**: cần thiết đối với...  
 It is **necessary for**: cần thiết cho...  
**near to**: gần với...  
 in **need of**: cần  
 get on **one's nerves**: gây phiền, quấy rầy (= **annoy, disturb**)  
**nervous about**: lo lắng về...  
**next to**: kề bên...  
 in the **newspaper**: trên báo  
 6 o'clock at **night**: 6 giờ tối  
 on the **night of Friday**: vào tối thứ Sáu  
 Saigon by **night**: Sài Gòn về đêm  
 in the **north**: ở hướng bắc, miền bắc  
**nothing but / except**: không gì ngoài...  
 take **notice of**: chú ý đến  
 from **now on**: từ nay trở đi  
 a **number of**: một số  
 the **number of**: số

## O

**object to**: phản đối  
 on this **occasion**: nhân dịp này

be occupied with: bận việc gì  
 once in a while: thỉnh thoảng  
 all at **once** = **all of a sudden**  
 for **once**: chỉ một lần thôi  
 one by **one**: lần lượt từng người một, lần lượt từng chiếc một  
 by **oneself**: một mình, tự mình  
**open to**: dành cho ai, mở cửa cho ai  
 in my **opinion**: theo ý kiến của tôi  
**opposed to**: chống đối, phản đối  
 out of **order**: (máy) hư  
 be **over**: hết, kết thúc (buổi học, trận đấu...)  
 on one's **own**: tự mình, tự làm

## P

keep **pace with**: theo kịp  
 on **page 10**: ở trang 10  
**participate in**: tham dự  
 take **part in**: tham dự  
 at a **party**: ở buổi tiệc  
**pass away**: qua đời, chết  
**pay attention to**: chú ý đến  
**pay for**: trả tiền cho cái gì, đền đáp  
**perfect for**: rất thuận lợi để làm việc gì  
**pick out**: chọn, lựa (= **choose, select**)  
**pick sb. up**: đón ai  
**pleasant to**: thú vị, dễ chịu đối với...  
**pleased with/about**: hài lòng về...  
 (im)**polite to**: (bất) lịch sự với...  
**point at**: chỉ vào, trỏ vào  
 on the **point of**: sắp làm gì  
**popular with**: được lòng, được yêu quý, được ái mộ  
**prepare for**: chuẩn bị cho...  
**present at**: có mặt tại...  
 under **pressure**: dưới áp lực  
**prevent from**: ngăn ngừa khỏi...  
 take **pride in**: hãnh diện về...  
**pride oneself on**: hãnh diện về...  
 be **proud of**: hãnh diện về...  
**provide sb. with sth.**: cung cấp cho ai cái gì



**provide sth. for sb.:** cung cấp cái gì cho ai  
**punish sb. for sth.:** phạt ai về việc gì  
**on purpose:** cố ý, có chủ đích  
**put on:** mặc (áo), đội (mũ), xỏ (giày)...  
**put on weight:** lên cân  
**put sb. up:** cho ai ở nhờ, cho tá túc  
**put up:** dựng nên, xây nên (= **build**)  
**put up with:** chịu đựng  
**put off:** dời lại, hoãn lại

## Q - R

**out of the question:** không thể thực hiện, bất khả thi  
**quick at:** nhanh, giỏi về việc gì  
**qualified for:** đủ năng lực hay tay nghề để làm gì  
**by radio:** bằng vô tuyến  
**on the radio:** trên đài phát thanh  
**in/under the rain:** trong mưa, dưới mưa  
**a wide range of:** nhiều loại khác nhau  
**recover from:** hồi phục khỏi (bệnh, nghịch cảnh...)  
**refer to:** nói đến, tham khảo, nhờ  
**regardless of:** không xét đến, bất chấp  
**related to:** có liên quan đến, có họ hàng với...  
**the relationship between A and B:** mối liên hệ giữa A và B  
**remind sb. of sth.:** nhắc ai, gợi cho ai nhớ về điều gì  
**for rent:** (nhà, xe...) cho thuê  
**do research on:** nghiên cứu về...  
**in this respect:** về mặt này  
**responsible to sb.:** chịu trách nhiệm với ai  
**responsible for sth.:** chịu trách nhiệm về việc gì  
**as a result as:** là kết quả/hậu quả của...  
**rich in:** giàu, dồi dào, phong phú về...  
**on the right:** bên phải  
**at risk:** có nguy cơ, có thể gặp rủi ro  
**make room for:** dọn chỗ cho

**run into:** tình cờ gặp  
**run out of sth.:** hết, cạn cái gì  
**in the long run:** về lâu về dài

## S

**sad about:** buồn vì...  
**safe from:** an toàn, thoát khỏi, không bị ảnh hưởng bởi...  
**sale off:** được bán giảm giá  
**go on sale:** có bày bán, được bày bán  
**on sale:** giảm giá  
**for sale:** để bán  
**satisfied with:** hài lòng về, mãn nguyện về...  
**on Saturday:** vào ngày thứ Bảy  
**scared of:** sợ (= **terrified of, afraid of**)  
**at sea:** trên biển  
**on the sea = at sea**  
**in search of:** tìm kiếm  
**to search for:** tìm kiếm  
**see sb. off:** đưa tiễn ai  
**send st. to sb.:** gửi (cái gì) cho ai  
**send for:** cho đi tìm (bác sĩ, xe cấp cứu...)  
**serious about:** nghiêm túc về...  
**set fire to sth. / put sth. on fire:** đốt, phóng hỏa.  
**set off:** khởi hành, lên đường  
**set out:** khởi hành, lên đường  
**set up:** xây nên, dựng nên, lập ra  
**short of:** thiếu  
**in short:** nói ngắn gọn, nói tóm tắt (= **in a word, in summary**)  
**shout at:** la mắng ai  
**show off:** khoe  
**show up:** đến, xuất hiện  
**shut sb. up:** làm cho ai câm miệng  
**shut up:** câm miệng  
**catch sight of:** thoáng thấy  
**lose sight of:** không thấy nữa, mất hút.  
**similar to:** giống như, tương tự như...  
**skilful at:** khéo, giỏi về...  
**slow at:** kém cỏi về việc gì, chậm hiểu



**slow down:** giảm tốc, chậm lại  
**smile at:** mỉm cười với ai  
**and so on / and so forth:** vân vân  
**solution to the problem:** giải pháp cho vấn đề (xem *answer, response, key*)  
**sorry about + Noun (phrase):** xin lỗi về điều gì, ân hận về điều gì  
**sorry for + V-ing:** xin lỗi về việc gì  
**sorry for sb.:** tiếc cho ai, ái ngại cho ai  
lâm vào hoàn cảnh không hay  
**in the south:** ở hướng nam, miền nam  
**speak to:** nói với  
**speed up:** tăng tốc  
**at high speed:** ở tốc độ cao  
**at full speed:** ở tốc độ tối đa  
**spend (money, time...) on:** tiêu (tiền, thời gian...) vào việc gì  
**stand for:** thay thế cho, viết tắt cho...  
**stand in queue:** xếp hàng  
**stand out:** nổi bật  
**stand up:** đứng lên  
**stare at:** nhìn chòng chọc  
**start sb. to:** thúc đẩy ai làm việc gì  
**step by step:** dần dần, từng chút (= *bit by bit, little by little, gradually*)  
**strange to:** xa lạ, lạ đối với...  
(go / be) on **strike:** đình công  
**succeed / successful in/at:** thành công về...  
**all of a sudden:** bất thành linh, đột nhiên (= *suddenly, all at once*)  
**suffer from:** khổ sở vì...  
**in summary:** nói ngắn gọn, nói tóm tắt (= *in short, in a word*)  
**in/under the sun:** trong nắng, dưới nắng  
**under the sun:** trên đời này  
**on Sunday:** vào ngày Chủ nhật  
**sure of:** chắc chắn về điều gì  
**for sure:** chắc chắn (= *for certain*)  
**to my surprise:** trước sự ngạc nhiên của tôi  
**surprised at / by:** ngạc nhiên về...

## T

**take after:** giống ai  
**take into account:** xem xét  
**take into consideration:** xem xét, cứu xét  
**take (it) for granted:** coi là đương nhiên  
**take off:** cởi (đồ), tháo (giày), nhấc (mũ, nón...); (máy bay) cất cánh  
**take one's time:** chậm rãi, thư thả  
**talk to/with sb.:** nói chuyện với...  
**burst into tears:** bật khóc  
**tell apart:** phân biệt  
**thank sb. for sth.:** cảm ơn ai về điều gì.  
**thankful to sb. for sth.:** biết ơn ai về điều gì (= *grateful to sb. for sth.*)  
**thanks to:** nhờ vào, nhờ có...  
**from then on = từ đó trở đi**  
**since then:** từ đó trở đi  
**think of/ about:** nghĩ đến...  
**think twice:** do dự, cân nhắc  
**thousands of:** hàng ngàn...  
**throw away:** vứt bỏ  
**throw sth. at sb.:** ném vật gì vào ai  
**throw up:** nôn, ói  
**on Thursday:** vào ngày thứ Năm  
**tidy up:** dọn dẹp cho ngăn nắp  
**for the time being:** hiện nay, tạm thời lúc này  
**from time to time:** thỉnh thoảng (= *sometimes, occasionally*)  
**on time:** đúng giờ (chính xác)  
**in time:** đúng giờ (sớm hơn ít nhiều)  
**just in time:** vừa đúng giờ, vừa kịp  
**at no time:** không bao giờ (= *never*)  
**in no time:** nhanh chóng (= *quickly*)  
**at times:** đôi khi (= *sometimes*)  
**stand on tiptoe:** nhón gót  
**tired from:** mệt, mỏi vì ...  
**tired of:** chán  
**be in touch with:** có liên lạc với...  
**get in touch with:** bắt liên lạc với...



keep in touch with: giữ liên lạc với....  
lose touch with: mất liên lạc với...  
translate into English: dịch ra tiếng Anh  
try on: mặc thử (quần áo...)  
try out: dùng thử (máy, dụng cụ...)  
try one's best: cố gắng hết sức (= do one's best, make every effort)  
turn down: từ chối, bác bỏ  
turn off: tắt (đèn, máy...)  
turn on: mở, bật (đèn, máy...)  
turn out: hóa ra (là), té ra (là)  
turn (a)round: quay, quay lại  
turn up: đến, xuất hiện

## U - V

unaware of: không biết  
be up: thức dậy  
be up to sb.: tùy vào ai  
make use of = use  
use up: dùng hết, dùng cạn  
be in use: được sử dụng  
be used to: quen với  
(=be accustomed to)  
in vain: luông công, vô ích, không có kết quả gì  
on the verge of: có nguy cơ bị...  
in view of: xét đến, nhìn vào

## W

wait for: chờ ai, chờ cái gì  
wait on: phục vụ trong cửa hiệu, hầu bàn, phục vụ bàn ăn

wake sb. up: đánh thức ai  
wake up: thức dậy  
go for a walk: đi dạo  
wash up: rửa chén đĩa  
do the washing up = wash up  
watch out: coi chừng (= look out)  
watch out for sb./sth.: coi chừng ai, coi chừng cái gì (= look out for)  
wave to / at sb.: vẫy tay với ai  
wear out: (giày) mòn đi, (áo) sờn đi, (dao) cùn đi  
on Wednesday: vào ngày thứ Tư  
at / on (the) weekend: cuối tuần  
in the west: ở hướng tây, miền tây  
What for? / For what?: để làm gì?  
once in a while: thỉnh thoảng  
on the whole: nói chung, xét tổng quát (= generally, in general)  
wipe out: quét sạch, xóa sổ  
in a word: nói ngắn gọn, nói tóm tắt (= in short, in summary)  
in other words: nói cách khác  
in the world: trên thế giới  
all over the world / around the world / throughout the world: khắp thế giới  
worry/be worried about: lo lắng về...  
at work: ở nơi làm việc  
out of work: thất nghiệp  
worthy of: xứng đáng với...  
*There's something wrong with the engine:* Có gì không ổn ở động cơ  
write for: viết giùm, viết hộ ai  
write to: viết (thư) gửi cho ai

## EXERCISES

### I Prepositions in General

1. He is capable \_\_\_\_\_ writing better English than this.
2. The man was dressed \_\_\_\_\_ black \_\_\_\_\_ head \_\_\_\_\_ foot.
3. These days everybody is aware \_\_\_\_\_ the danger \_\_\_\_\_ smoking.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ seeing the cat, the mouse ran off.
5. Let's go for a walk \_\_\_\_\_ the river.
6. Don't put your feet \_\_\_\_\_ your desk; put them \_\_\_\_\_ it.



7. He is always \_\_\_\_\_ a hurry. He drives \_\_\_\_\_ a tremendous speed.
8. John never pays attention \_\_\_\_\_ anything she says.
9. He smiled \_\_\_\_\_ me and then spoke \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ a foreign language.
10. She talked \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ her travels \_\_\_\_\_ Africa.
11. It is good \_\_\_\_\_ you to be so helpful \_\_\_\_\_ us
12. He accused me \_\_\_\_\_ selling secret information \_\_\_\_\_ the enemy.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ the age \_\_\_\_\_ 18 he was sent \_\_\_\_\_ prison.
14. He insisted \_\_\_\_\_ reading my diary.
15. They are sending him abroad \_\_\_\_\_ business.
16. **"I dream of giving birth \_\_\_\_\_ a child who will ask, Mother, what was war?"** (*Tôi ước mơ sinh ra một đứa con mà một ngày kia sẽ hỏi: Mẹ ơi, chiến tranh hồi xưa là gì?*) — Eve Merriam
17. Henry is \_\_\_\_\_ charge \_\_\_\_\_ the office while Mr. Smith is away.
18. We are grateful \_\_\_\_\_ our friends \_\_\_\_\_ all of their assistance.
19. The rent is to be paid \_\_\_\_\_ advance.
20. We couldn't go by train. The train- drivers are \_\_\_\_\_ strike.
21. We'll agree \_\_\_\_\_ your proposal if you lower the price.
22. I entirely agree \_\_\_\_\_ you.
23. We may go sailing tomorrow. It depends \_\_\_\_\_ the weather.
24. **If you take pride \_\_\_\_\_ your work, one day you may be proud \_\_\_\_\_ yourself.**
25. The price of fruit and vegetables are going \_\_\_\_\_. Let's buy some meat instead.
26. How are you going to deal \_\_\_\_\_ this problem?
27. Mr. Florian was very much concerned \_\_\_\_\_ the children's welfare.
28. A best teacher will be responsible \_\_\_\_\_ the top class.
29. I can't read \_\_\_\_\_ glasses.
30. I'm interested \_\_\_\_\_ English while my sister is fond \_\_\_\_\_ mathematics.
31. \_\_\_\_\_ mistake, I opened Mary's letter instead \_\_\_\_\_ my own.
32. It's up \_\_\_\_\_ you whether we go or not.
33. This catalogue is not up \_\_\_\_\_ date. It was published several years ago.
34. What has become \_\_\_\_\_ my fountain pen? I had it here ten minutes ago.
35. Helen will look \_\_\_\_\_ the baby while we go to the movie.
36. They haven't heard \_\_\_\_\_ their son for more than two months.
37. Have you ever heard \_\_\_\_\_ the English poet John Keats?
38. We are looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ my uncle's visit with pleasure.
39. Henry was sick and could not take part \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting last night.
40. John kept \_\_\_\_\_ talking although the teacher asked him several times to stop.
41. John falls \_\_\_\_\_ love \_\_\_\_\_ every new girl he meets.
42. **"Personality is to a man what perfume is \_\_\_\_\_ a flower."** (*Nhân cách nơi mỗi con người tựa hương thơm nơi mỗi bông hoa*) — Charles M. Schwab
43. He insists that he had nothing to do \_\_\_\_\_ writing that letter.
44. He knows many of Longfellow's poems \_\_\_\_\_ heart.
45. The speaker took no notice \_\_\_\_\_ the interruption (sự ngắt lời).
46. I'm very grateful \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ all your help.



47. Don't make fun \_\_\_\_\_ Henry's English. He is doing the best he can.
48. Some companies spend a lot \_\_\_\_\_ money \_\_\_\_\_ advertising.
49. I spend \_\_\_\_\_ least two hours every night \_\_\_\_\_ my studies.
50. He took advantage \_\_\_\_\_ their kindness and stayed a whole month without paying them anything.

## **II Prepositions in General**

1. You'd better close the windows \_\_\_\_\_ case it rains.
2. My grandson is named \_\_\_\_\_ Calvin Coolidge, the 30th President of the US.
3. The first term is coming \_\_\_\_\_ an end soon and my school is going to have some days off.
4. Ralph insisted that he had nothing to do \_\_\_\_\_ breaking the window.
5. The poor people are \_\_\_\_\_ need \_\_\_\_\_ help in order to survive.
6. The company was \_\_\_\_\_ debt but is now turning a profit (lợi nhuận).
7. When they came back \_\_\_\_\_ college or technical high school, they introduced new farming methods, which resulted \_\_\_\_\_ bumper crops.
8. Thanks \_\_\_\_\_ good organization, the concert was a great success.
9. Animals can be protected \_\_\_\_\_ the destructive influence of human beings.
10. Two friends must be loyal \_\_\_\_\_ each other.
11. We have to provide our children \_\_\_\_\_ food and clothes.
12. During summer vacations, they volunteer to work in remote or mountainous areas to provide education \_\_\_\_\_ children.
13. As \_\_\_\_\_ the money, we will simply have to borrow some more \_\_\_\_\_ the bank.
14. Many wild animals are \_\_\_\_\_ danger \_\_\_\_\_ extinction.
15. Many wild animals are \_\_\_\_\_ the verge \_\_\_\_\_ extinction.
16. Entertainment is important \_\_\_\_\_ people anywhere in the world.
17. In my attempt to win a place at university, I am \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of study pressure.
18. Many different kinds of metal are attracted \_\_\_\_\_ magnets (nam châm).
19. With a positive attitude \_\_\_\_\_ life we can deal with all our difficulties.
20. I am writing in response \_\_\_\_\_ your letter of July 17.
21. Her response \_\_\_\_\_ their decision was to threaten to quit her job.
22. These documents are not accessible \_\_\_\_\_ the public.
23. Different people may have different answers \_\_\_\_\_ the same question.
24. We will have to spend \_\_\_\_\_ least two weeks for the experiments.
25. I found her letter \_\_\_\_\_ accident as I was looking through my files.
26. Once \_\_\_\_\_ a while, we eat dinner in a Chinese restaurant.
27. \_\_\_\_\_ the event that you win prize, you will be notified by mail.
28. I don't need anyone's pity or help, I can make it \_\_\_\_\_ my own, thank you.
29. The work is distributed \_\_\_\_\_ the secretary and the receptionist.
30. The rent payments are divided \_\_\_\_\_ Ricky, John and Mary.
31. \_\_\_\_\_ my surprise, the lazy boy passed the exam.



32. A human heart beats 72 times per minute \_\_\_\_\_ average.
33. The regular price of the radio is £39.95, but today it's \_\_\_\_\_ sale for £25.
34. I will give you the key \_\_\_\_\_ the house so you'll have it \_\_\_\_\_ case I arrive a little late.
35. Jean has been \_\_\_\_\_ a diet and is now as thin as a stick.
36. \_\_\_\_\_ behalf \_\_\_\_\_ my fellow employees, I would like to thank management \_\_\_\_\_ all they have done to improve our situation.
37. The prisoner escaped \_\_\_\_\_ means \_\_\_\_\_ a rope and the darkness of the night.
38. She is \_\_\_\_\_ no means poor, believe me. She only pretends to be.
39. Apart \_\_\_\_\_ John, no one wants to work on this serious problem.
40. All of the delegates (đại biểu) present voted \_\_\_\_\_ favour \_\_\_\_\_ the resolution.
41. Children were \_\_\_\_\_ risk of getting sick when the disease spread in schools.
42. Many accidents occur as a result \_\_\_\_\_ carelessness in the workplace.
43. I shall not attack the proposal; \_\_\_\_\_ the contrary, I will defend it.
44. Except \_\_\_\_\_ one or two minor discrepancies, all the accounts were accurate.
45. The hills here are covered \_\_\_\_\_ wildflowers in early spring.
46. Kindergarten contributes \_\_\_\_\_ the child's mental development.
47. I am busy \_\_\_\_\_ my homework. I won't be able to go out tonight.
48. If you don't know the meaning of any word, you should refer \_\_\_\_\_ your dictionaries instead \_\_\_\_\_ asking me.
49. I'm not as free as you think; \_\_\_\_\_ the contrary, I have lots of homework to do.
50. As soon as he had recovered \_\_\_\_\_ a serious disease he went back \_\_\_\_\_ work.

### **III** Prepositions in General

1. How stupid with this haircut. Everyone will laugh \_\_\_\_\_ me.
2. He had an enormous meal. It consisted \_\_\_\_\_ seven courses.
3. Did you know they were married? - No, I wasn't aware \_\_\_\_\_ it.
4. Have you read any book \_\_\_\_\_ this author?
5. She always goes \_\_\_\_\_ a walk \_\_\_\_\_ her dog \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.
6. There are some differences \_\_\_\_\_ British English and American English.
7. Complaints should be sent \_\_\_\_\_ the head office.
8. When his wife was away \_\_\_\_\_ business, he had to look \_\_\_\_\_ the child.
9. I borrowed the umbrella \_\_\_\_\_ a friend \_\_\_\_\_ mine.
10. I've written \_\_\_\_\_ the company and applied \_\_\_\_\_ the job.
11. Although he took a taxi, Bill still arrived late \_\_\_\_\_ the concert.
12. Mary insisted \_\_\_\_\_ taking the bus instead \_\_\_\_\_ the plane.
13. Grace stood \_\_\_\_\_ the middle \_\_\_\_\_ the room looking \_\_\_\_\_ her friend.
14. It's difficult to get in touch \_\_\_\_\_ Jenny because she works all day.
15. \_\_\_\_\_ the whole, the rescue mission was well executed.
16. We never go out \_\_\_\_\_ night because we live too far \_\_\_\_\_ town.
17. Jane was nervous \_\_\_\_\_ first, but later she felt more relaxed.
18. Three dangerous criminals escaped \_\_\_\_\_ prison yesterday.



19. English helps you communicate \_\_\_\_\_ many people from different countries.
20. Will you please communicate my regards \_\_\_\_\_ her?
21. My employer said he was not satisfied \_\_\_\_\_ my performance.
22. He was going to take part \_\_\_\_\_ the demonstration next week.
23. Archeologists keep on searching \_\_\_\_\_ buried Egyptian treasures.
24. The police continued to comb the area in search \_\_\_\_\_ the missing boy.
25. We had to put \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting because too many people had the flu.
26. Because she is too tall, Sally doesn't care \_\_\_\_\_ high-heeled shoes.
27. Soon after Mike has finished his thesis, he will leave \_\_\_\_\_ Boston.
28. The weather tomorrow is going to be nice according \_\_\_\_\_ the weatherman.
29. \_\_\_\_\_ hearing the news, she burst out crying.
30. We can avoid waiting \_\_\_\_\_ booking the tickets \_\_\_\_\_ advance.
31. Paris has been well-known/famous \_\_\_\_\_ its monuments.
32. Ha Long Bay is considered one \_\_\_\_\_ the most beautiful spots in the world.
33. We ought to have a discussion \_\_\_\_\_ this year's budget.
34. What's the matter \_\_\_\_\_ you this morning?
35. Who's responsible \_\_\_\_\_ the shopping this week?
36. Your party prevented everybody \_\_\_\_\_ sleeping last night.
37. Jennifer reminds me \_\_\_\_\_ a girl I was at school with.
38. If you don't stop shouting \_\_\_\_\_ me, I'll come and hit you.
39. Some people would rather succeed \_\_\_\_\_ business than love.
40. Everybody was surprised \_\_\_\_\_ his retirement.
41. Please fill \_\_\_\_\_ the form \_\_\_\_\_ ink.
42. I'm confused \_\_\_\_\_ whether the preposition can be left out.
43. Brazil is famous \_\_\_\_\_ its coffee.
44. It was very kind \_\_\_\_\_ them to give us a lift \_\_\_\_\_ the station.
45. Does he have much difficulty \_\_\_\_\_ doing his schoolwork?
46. I put salt in my coffee \_\_\_\_\_ mistake.
47. Do you believe \_\_\_\_\_ life after death?
48. Fire can easily get out \_\_\_\_\_ control and destroy everything in its path.
49. It was several hours before firefighters could get the blaze \_\_\_\_\_ control.
50. Dr Marion is the person \_\_\_\_\_ control of all medical decisions at the hospital.

#### **IV** Prepositions in General

1. Paula likes to walk through the woods \_\_\_\_\_ herself, but her brother prefers to walk \_\_\_\_\_ a companion (bạn đồng hành).
2. It was no accident that he broke my glasses. He did it \_\_\_\_\_ purpose.
3. Small children should always watch out \_\_\_\_\_ strangers offering candy.
4. We ran out \_\_\_\_\_ gas right \_\_\_\_\_ the middle of the main street in town.
5. *Bánh chưng* is made \_\_\_\_\_ sticky rice (gạo nếp), green beans and fatty pork.
6. Most coffee pots are made \_\_\_\_\_ aluminum (nhôm).
7. We tried \_\_\_\_\_ vain to reach you last night. Is your phone out \_\_\_\_\_ order?



8. Human beings have a great influence \_\_\_\_\_ the rest of the world.
9. She got married \_\_\_\_\_ eighteen.
10. She was married \_\_\_\_\_ a man from California.
11. She is married \_\_\_\_\_ three children.
12. They are getting married \_\_\_\_\_ Friday \_\_\_\_\_ six o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ the evening.
13. People are destroying the air by adding pollutants \_\_\_\_\_ it.
14. They confided \_\_\_\_\_ their own ability.
15. Many Indian men agree that it is unwise to confide \_\_\_\_\_ their wives.
16. I waved \_\_\_\_\_ him from the window but he didn't see me.
17. You haven't given back the books you borrowed \_\_\_\_\_ me.
18. \_\_\_\_\_ my opinion, it's the best car on the market.
19. You should try to eat a wide range \_\_\_\_\_ fruits and vegetables.
20. Plant and animal extinction leads \_\_\_\_\_ a loss of biodiversity.
21. We benefit greatly \_\_\_\_\_ the many medicines that biodiversity provides.
22. Focus \_\_\_\_\_ whatever you are doing, no matter how big or small it is.
23. The United States of America is comprised \_\_\_\_\_ 50 states.
24. Some SEA Games teams were composed \_\_\_\_\_ top competitors in the region.
25. That car isn't mine. It belongs \_\_\_\_\_ my brother.
26. Paul is very good \_\_\_\_\_ telling jokes. He reminds me \_\_\_\_\_ his father.
27. I'm not familiar \_\_\_\_\_ this neighborhood.
28. If I had to choose \_\_\_\_\_ going to heaven or hell, I'd choose heaven.
29. I wasn't able to focus \_\_\_\_\_ my work because \_\_\_\_\_ the loud noise outside.
30. I can't concentrate \_\_\_\_\_ my work because of the noise.
31. Although Carol graduated \_\_\_\_\_ Harvard with a degree in political science, nowadays she doesn't care \_\_\_\_\_ politics.
32. The government should care \_\_\_\_\_ the homeless children.
33. I have a question to ask related \_\_\_\_\_ your education.
34. After graduation, Joan will apply \_\_\_\_\_ a job as a graphic designer.
35. I have too many problems to deal \_\_\_\_\_.
36. Greg is involved \_\_\_\_\_ organized crime.
37. I told him what I thought of him regardless \_\_\_\_\_ the consequences.
38. Every member of my old class came, except \_\_\_\_\_ Eric.
39. I was reluctant (miễn cưỡng) to go but contrary \_\_\_\_\_ my expectations, the concert was rather good.
40. Apart \_\_\_\_\_ the insipid (vô vị) food, the hotel was very good.
41. Mothers tell their children not to stare \_\_\_\_\_ people.
42. Jane is always \_\_\_\_\_ the go. How does she find time to sit at the computer?
43. The witch (phù thủy) turned the handsome prince \_\_\_\_\_ a frog.
44. What does this dish consist \_\_\_\_\_ ? Just rice and beans.
45. My parents are always trying to prevent me \_\_\_\_\_ doing something stupid.
46. I cannot cope \_\_\_\_\_ small children; they make me very tired.
47. I always say "Hope \_\_\_\_\_ the best, but prepare \_\_\_\_\_ the worst."
48. Don't forget to pay \_\_\_\_\_ your shopping before you leave the store.



49. What's wrong \_\_\_\_\_ my cell phone?  
 50. Can you please turn \_\_\_\_\_ the air-conditioning. It's really hot in here.

## **V** Prepositions of Place and Time

1. My train arrives at 11.30. Can you meet me \_\_\_\_\_ the station?
2. I like the countryside and the fresh air. I'd like to work \_\_\_\_\_ a farm.
3. When Oscar was in grade school, he had to help his parents \_\_\_\_\_ the field after school, until he was sent \_\_\_\_\_ a high school \_\_\_\_\_ town.
4. We had a quick breakfast and then led the buffalo \_\_\_\_\_ the field.
5. Tom's ill. He wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ work today. He was \_\_\_\_\_ home \_\_\_\_\_ bed.
6. It's a strange feeling when you first arrive \_\_\_\_\_ a foreign country.
7. What time do you expect to arrive \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel?
8. It was a very long voyage (chuyến đi biển). We were \_\_\_\_\_ sea for ten weeks.
9. You can't walk \_\_\_\_\_ this rain. Let's shelter \_\_\_\_\_ the tree.
10. I found this map \_\_\_\_\_ many old books in the attic (gác xép, gác mái).
11. \_\_\_\_\_ the curtain (bức rèm) he found a door.
12. He sits \_\_\_\_\_ his desk all day \_\_\_\_\_ head \_\_\_\_\_ his hands.
13. He arrived \_\_\_\_\_ London \_\_\_\_\_ 6 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_ a foggy November day.  
 We often have fog \_\_\_\_\_ November.
14. The television is \_\_\_\_\_ the corner of the room.
15. There is a telephone box \_\_\_\_\_ the corner of the street.
16. I'll write to France before I leave \_\_\_\_\_ Paris.
17. My brother is out of work \_\_\_\_\_ the moment.
18. This farmer has never travelled \_\_\_\_\_ car before.
19. This farmer has never travelled \_\_\_\_\_ a car before.
20. I saw something about it \_\_\_\_\_ television.
21. He jumped over the wall and \_\_\_\_\_ the garden.
22. Harry comes to work \_\_\_\_\_ car but I prefer to come \_\_\_\_\_ foot.
23. The girl was dressed in white \_\_\_\_\_ head \_\_\_\_\_ foot.
24. Everybody sat \_\_\_\_\_ the floor, but Mr. Spencer sat \_\_\_\_\_ an armchair chair \_\_\_\_\_ the corner.
25. My vacation starts \_\_\_\_\_ July 3. Tom will fill in for me while I'm gone.
26. I like to eat breakfast \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.
27. She hasn't seen him for \_\_\_\_\_ a fortnight or more.
28. It's always colder \_\_\_\_\_ November than September.
29. The law was changed \_\_\_\_\_ the nineteenth century.
30. The Black Death (bệnh dịch hạch) occurred \_\_\_\_\_ the Middle Ages.
31. Leaves fall \_\_\_\_\_ Autumn.
32. Their wedding is \_\_\_\_\_ the eleventh of July.
33. Mayday is celebrated \_\_\_\_\_ May the first.
34. More people have heart attacks \_\_\_\_\_ Monday morning than at any other time.
35. She got married \_\_\_\_\_ eighteen.



36. They are getting married \_\_\_\_\_ Friday \_\_\_\_\_ six o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ the evening.
37. I always have dinner with my family \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas Day.
38. In Spain, they give each other presents \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas Eve.
39. \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas, London changes from a cold gray city into a festive colourful metropolis.
40. He saw a dollar bill lying \_\_\_\_\_ the sidewalk.
41. The Pyrenees Mountains form the natural border \_\_\_\_\_ France and Spain.
42. The pupils were busy writing some exercises \_\_\_\_\_ their desks.
43. Exactly \_\_\_\_\_ midnight we were awakened by the shrill sound of a car alarm.
44. The boy hid the money \_\_\_\_\_ a rock \_\_\_\_\_ the garden.
45. The last time I saw him was \_\_\_\_\_ the spring of 1966.
46. World War II lasted \_\_\_\_\_ 1939 \_\_\_\_\_ 1945.
47. \_\_\_\_\_ the summer, we went \_\_\_\_\_ the beach every day. \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon we would return \_\_\_\_\_ the pool area and sit \_\_\_\_\_ the sun \_\_\_\_\_ a while.
48. \_\_\_\_\_ returning, I decided to finish reading my book.
49. \_\_\_\_\_ seeing that Lucy was hurt, a passer-by called an ambulance.
50. \_\_\_\_\_ his arrival in London, he went straight to Oxford Street.

## **VI** Prepositions of Place and Time

1. Some animals only come out \_\_\_\_\_ night.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ hearing that my sister was planning to get married, I decided to leave the flat to her.
3. There was a very good program \_\_\_\_\_ TV last night. Did you see it?
4. No, I took my TV set back \_\_\_\_\_ the shop last week because there was so much distortion, so I have not watched television \_\_\_\_\_ ten days.
5. The postman usually comes \_\_\_\_\_ 8.00 and 9.00 \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.
6. The children stood \_\_\_\_\_ tiptoe in order to pick the apples from the tree.
7. It was extremely cold when we arrived \_\_\_\_\_ Alaska.
8. She arrived \_\_\_\_\_ the airport just in time for her flight.
9. We arrived \_\_\_\_\_ 5 o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.
10. She arrived \_\_\_\_\_ Monday.
11. We arrived there just \_\_\_\_\_ time to see the end of the program.
12. We waited \_\_\_\_\_ hours and then the train arrived \_\_\_\_\_ last.
13. It would be all right to wait \_\_\_\_\_ her office \_\_\_\_\_ she returned.
14. A very pleasant young clerk waited \_\_\_\_\_ me in that shop.
15. I'll be back \_\_\_\_\_ a moment.
16. It has been raining \_\_\_\_\_ five minutes.
17. His father died \_\_\_\_\_ 1987 \_\_\_\_\_ the age \_\_\_\_\_ 81.
18. There were so many bright stars \_\_\_\_\_ the sky that night.
19. The course begins \_\_\_\_\_ 7 June and ends \_\_\_\_\_ 10 July.
20. I went \_\_\_\_\_ bed \_\_\_\_\_ midnight.
21. Hurry up! We've to go \_\_\_\_\_ five minutes.



22. \_\_\_\_\_ first, I could hardly believe what he said to me.
23. I hope the conditions will be changed \_\_\_\_\_ the future.
24. \_\_\_\_\_ the past, people did a lot of work by hand.
25. We haven't seen each other \_\_\_\_\_ nearly ten years.
26. We haven't seen each other \_\_\_\_\_ 1999.
27. We haven't seen each other \_\_\_\_\_ my birthday.
28. I've been waiting for the bus \_\_\_\_\_ half an hour.
29. I spent many happy days \_\_\_\_\_ sea on my cruise.
30. I saw something about it \_\_\_\_\_ television.
31. It is often useful to make a comparison \_\_\_\_\_ two things.
32. He took the book \_\_\_\_\_ the shelf and put it \_\_\_\_\_ his bag.
33. They went into a pub and sat down \_\_\_\_\_ a table.
34. Could you pass me the ruler. It's \_\_\_\_\_ my desk.
35. She would sit writing \_\_\_\_\_ a desk facing a mirror.
36. I opened a drawer \_\_\_\_\_ my desk and unlocked a metal box inside the drawer.
37. Sally left school \_\_\_\_\_ the age \_\_\_\_\_ 16 and went to work in a bank.
38. \_\_\_\_\_ his way \_\_\_\_\_ Japan he stopped over in Los Angeles.
39. \_\_\_\_\_ a rainy day I like to stay \_\_\_\_\_ home.
40. Disappointed, I sat \_\_\_\_\_ a chair \_\_\_\_\_ the corner.
41. The elderly lady was always \_\_\_\_\_ home \_\_\_\_\_ night.
42. He was born \_\_\_\_\_ 8:15 \_\_\_\_\_ the morning \_\_\_\_\_ June 18th, 1998.
43. He's arriving \_\_\_\_\_ Europe \_\_\_\_\_ Wednesday.
44. \_\_\_\_\_ today's newspaper it is stated that a new agreement (hiệp ước) will be signed \_\_\_\_\_ two countries soon.
45. There is no oxygen out \_\_\_\_\_ space.
46. I got \_\_\_\_\_ the bus and sat down next \_\_\_\_\_ a schoolboy about my age.
47. One of my university friends could drink a can of beer \_\_\_\_\_ 3 seconds!
48. Where would you like to go \_\_\_\_\_ holiday this year?
49. Come here \_\_\_\_\_ once! I need your help right now!
50. I met Sue \_\_\_\_\_ a party \_\_\_\_\_ Friday night.

## **VII** Prepositions of Place and Time

1. These friends have not seen each other \_\_\_\_\_ a while.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ returning, I found a lot of changes \_\_\_\_\_ my hometown.
3. Okay class, turn your book \_\_\_\_\_ page 20.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ the middle \_\_\_\_\_ the garden stood a white statue.
5. I always get \_\_\_\_\_ the bus to work at 34th Street.
6. They sat \_\_\_\_\_ a tree and rested \_\_\_\_\_ a while.
7. Alex seems \_\_\_\_\_ a hurry; he must be late \_\_\_\_\_ his train again.
8. When he returned \_\_\_\_\_ America, he settled \_\_\_\_\_ a farm in eastern Texas.
9. Karen's health seems to be improving little \_\_\_\_\_ little.
10. All \_\_\_\_\_ a sudden Ed appeared \_\_\_\_\_ the door.



11. Beautiful birds sang \_\_\_\_\_ the trees and golden fish swam \_\_\_\_\_ the lakes near the palace.
12. He had a couple of thousand dollars on him that would suffice \_\_\_\_\_ the time being, until he could find some kind of legal employment.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ some point \_\_\_\_\_ history, dates of months ceased to be connected with lunar phases, but it is unknown when it happened.
14. We entered the theater just \_\_\_\_\_ time to see the beginning of the movie.
15. I was just \_\_\_\_\_ to leave when you telephoned.  
He was \_\_\_\_\_ the point \_\_\_\_\_ leaving when a car drew up at the house.
16. The clerks there always have smiles \_\_\_\_\_ their faces when serving customers.
17. Mr. Lee doctor told him to cut down on eating fatty foods from now \_\_\_\_\_.
18. This catalog is not up \_\_\_\_\_ date. It was published several years ago.
19. Many people buy new cars when their old cars become out \_\_\_\_\_ date.
20. Don't stand too close \_\_\_\_\_ the gas stove. Your clothes may catch fire.
21. I feel too tired to go out \_\_\_\_\_ dinner. Let's eat \_\_\_\_\_ again tonight.
22. When you eat \_\_\_\_\_, what restaurant do you generally go \_\_\_\_\_?
23. Day \_\_\_\_\_ day I waited for a letter \_\_\_\_\_ him, but one never came.
24. More and more music is being produced \_\_\_\_\_ computers.
25. The bookshop is \_\_\_\_\_ the chemist's and the butcher's.
26. Asia, the supposed birthplace of mankind, is the largest of the continents and the most populous. More than half the human race live \_\_\_\_\_ this continent.
27. We arrived at the the airport \_\_\_\_\_ time to eat before the plane left.  
Despite the bad weather, our plane left \_\_\_\_\_ time.
28. Don't use that dictionary. It is out \_\_\_\_\_ date. Find one that is up \_\_\_\_\_ date.
29. Jane was nervous \_\_\_\_\_ first, but later she felt more relaxed.
30. The earth is closer \_\_\_\_\_ the sun in summer and farther \_\_\_\_\_ the sun in winter.
31. \_\_\_\_\_ times she feels a little better but then she becomes very weak again.
32. The treasure is buried \_\_\_\_\_ the two coconut trees.
33. \_\_\_\_\_ this occasion I would like to express my thanks.
34. It didn't happen yesterday but the day \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
35. Who's this standing next \_\_\_\_\_ your sister in this photo?
36. Howard was late \_\_\_\_\_ class again. He never comes \_\_\_\_\_ time.
37. We could see the river \_\_\_\_\_ us from the bridge.
38. I have been \_\_\_\_\_ Dalat four times.
39. Is your birthday \_\_\_\_\_ April? Mine is \_\_\_\_\_ April 7.
40. Michigan is situated \_\_\_\_\_ Lake Michigan and Lake Huron.
41. He asked me to come \_\_\_\_\_ noon.
42. Subway trains travel \_\_\_\_\_ the ground.
43. The letter "B" comes \_\_\_\_\_ "A" and "C."
44. Although we are the best of friends we still disagree \_\_\_\_\_ time \_\_\_\_\_ time.
45. He sat \_\_\_\_\_ an armchair, absorbed in a book.
46. I installed a ceiling fan \_\_\_\_\_ my bed.
47. The city plans to close the public swimming pool \_\_\_\_\_ good.



48. I knocked \_\_\_\_\_ the door, but no one answered.
49. She told me I was a fool; I avoided her from then \_\_\_\_\_.
50. The boys were traumatised by what they had seen in a haunted house. \_\_\_\_\_  
then, they have not dared to go near that house again, even during the day.

### **VIII** Adjective + Preposition

1. We are **surprised** at you playing with dolls at your age.
2. All your changes made me totally **confused** about the plan.
3. I'm not very **popular** with the boss out the moment.
4. The police are **responsible** for the preservation of law and order.
5. John quickly became **accustomed** to the local food.
6. This lake is **rich** in fish.
7. I am **tired** of eating the same thing day after day.
8. **Contrary** to all advice, he started climbing the mountain.
9. Mr. Wilson is **skilful** at dealing with customers' complaints.
10. You are **capable** of making a better survey on tropical rain forests.
11. Many retired people are very **fond** of gardening and pet caring.
12. I'm a bit **short** of money. Can you lend me some?
13. Mary and Ann are twin sisters, but Ann is **different** from her sister in taste.
14. We are **proud** of our people's heroic tradition.
15. The results were **contrary** to expectation.
16. John is **clever** at solving riddles (câu đố).
17. This city is **famous** for its historical vestige (di tích).
18. This man is very **kind** to his neighbors.
19. It's very **kind** of you to invite me. (Xem trang 7, số 18)
20. His job seems **similar** to yours, doesn't it?
21. I'm **angry** with him telling lies about me.
22. Are you **afraid** of being got rid of ?
23. It's very **nice** of you to lend me your car.
24. He is **married** to his closest friend's sister.
25. It wasn't very **polite** of him to leave without saying thank you.
26. I'm in a hurry because I'm a bit **short** of time.
27. Your calculator is **similar** to mine but they are not exactly the same.
28. I was **surprised** at the way he behaved.
29. We've got enough to eat. The fridge is **full** of food.
30. He said he was **sorry** about the situation but there was nothing he could do.
31. She doesn't often go out at the night because she's **afraid** of the dark.
32. I'm learning Spanish but I'm not very **satisfied** with my progress.
33. She is nice but I am not **attracted** to her.
34. I don't feel **sorry** for her because her problems are her own fault.
35. She is **brilliant** at repairing things.
36. He looks mean, but he's **capable** of great generosity.



37. My sister was **angry** with me because I lost her ipod.
38. This organization is **dedicated** to ending poverty.
39. The money will be **devoted** to protecting the environment.
40. Fiona was **disappointed** about coming in third place.
41. The banker was **guilty** of stealing money.
42. He was **involved** in making the movie.
43. The hikers were **worried** about being short of water.
44. The Export Manager is **responsible** to the Sales Director.
45. He is **responsible** for preparing handouts.
46. I'm really **good** at making cakes. Everyone says they're delicious.
47. I'm not **scared** of the dark.
48. I have been kept very **busy** with these exercises.
49. Tennis stars are very **popular** with young people.
50. I am **grateful** to you for all you have done for me.
51. I am **sad** about the situation in the world.
52. Is the museum **open** to high school students?
53. The Mini-TV is very **popular** to our younger customers.
54. The new Pilot notebook is not **similar** to the previous model.
55. South Africa is **rich** of natural resources like diamonds and gold.
56. I have to travel by car or boat because I am **afraid** of flying.
57. I don't think he would be **capable** of running such a large project.
58. I would be very **interested** in discussing the idea of a joint venture.
59. Samsung are **famous** for their electronic goods.
60. I'm not sure if he is **aware** of all the facts.
61. It was very **rude** of Susan to say that to Tom.
62. I'm very **proud** of my daughter's wonderful progress in school.
63. She's **ashamed** of her bad grades.
64. Teens are often overly **conscious** of skin blemishes.
65. Peter is **incapable** of conducting the meeting on his own.
66. I'm **furious** with my brother for having lied to me!
67. Disneyland is **crowded** with tourists in July.
68. You'll have to speak to John, he's **responsible** for customer complaints.
69. His photographs are very **different** from his paintings.
70. It was very **kind** of you to buy me such a wonderful present. Thank you!
71. She is **acquainted** with guitar and piano.
72. We were all **pleased** with our exam results.
73. He has been **absent** from school for a week.
74. We were **angry** with him for his selfishness.
75. We were **anxious** about his constantly high temperature.
76. You must be **ashamed** of yourself for treating her so rudely.
77. They were rather **astonished** at losing the game.
78. He is **bad** at speaking English.
79. Eating too much candy is **bad** for your kids' teeth.



80. I didn't finish reading the book, for I was **bored** with the plot.
81. She can't come with us because she is **busy** with her term paper.
82. When I looked out of the window, I noticed that everywhere was **covered** with snow.
83. He hasn't got a job, so he is still **dependent** on his parents financially.
84. At university, you'll become **familiar** with English or American literature.
85. The room was **filled** with excited people.
86. You will be **free** from pain soon after you've taken two of these tablets.
87. Children under seven can travel **free** of charge.
88. Your composition is **full** of grammatical mistakes.
89. Taking regular walks is **good** for your heart.
90. He has recently been **involved** in a bribery case.
91. She has always been **kind** to the people around her.
92. Paper is **made** from wood.
93. Tables and chairs are usually **made** of wood.
94. She is **married** to an American.
95. I'm **pleased** with the progress you've made.
96. Air pollution is **responsible** for most of the respiratory (hô hấp) diseases.
97. She was **sad** about losing the chance of giving a party, having failed the exam.
98. The new secretary is quite **slow** at typing.
99. He was **successful** in marketing the product to a wide area.
100. I'm **thankful** to them for taking the time to help me.

## Bài 43

# WORD FORMS

### BÀI TẬP CĂN BẢN CHO LỚP 10

1. They were ..... in their new jobs. (**succeed**)
2. The police were trying to find out the ..... about him. (**true**)
3. I am ..... grateful to you for your help. (**true**)
4. She has been worn down by ..... and illness. (**poor**)
5. He loved her and he married her, but now he is ..... (**happy**)
6. These boys are too lazy to take part in ..... activities. (**society**)
7. I'm ..... sorry for being late. (**terrible**)
8. The figures have been ..... checked. (**complete**)
9. His mother's ..... was a great blow to him. (**ill**)
10. The lecture-hall was crowded with ..... (**study**)
11. The ..... to Hanoi wasn't enjoyable because of the cold weather. (**fly**)
12. His second ..... took place in St. John's Church. (**marry**)



13. The grammar notes have been ..... presented. (**clear**)
14. You would have acted ..... if you had been a true friend. (**differ**)
15. Jane looks ..... today! She must be in trouble. (**differ**)
16. Butter and cheese are among the ..... from milk. (**produce**)
17. He was ..... to lose his keys. (**luck**)
18. I never feel at ..... in his company. (**easy**)
19. A ..... man cannot speak. (**die**)
20. The ..... of the moon for the earth causes the tides. (**attract**)
21. When did..... come to the village? (**electric**)
22. .... devices help women with their housework. (**electric**)
23. She has a very busy..... life. (**society**)
24. The plane arrived ..... after a violent storm. (**safe**)
25. This company offered a lot of..... jobs. (**attract**)
26. John's..... improved at his new school. (**behave**)
27. .... films are made for schools. (**educate**)
28. His..... to retire surprise us all. (**decide**)
29. He was ..... in his job. (**succeed**)
30. My brother has a good ..... of higher mathematics. (**know**)
31. This is the greatest ..... of the decade. (**achieve**)
32. Mary was .....with long and difficult exercises. (**bore**)
33. I enjoyed the football match. It was quite..... (**excite**)
34. Violence is not the best..... to an argument. (**solve**)
35. Not long ago, I was introduced to a famous..... (**art**)
36. The..... of his wife was a great blow to him. (**lose**)
37. Toys are necessary for the mental ..... of children. (**grow**)
38. He passed the examination ..... (**ease**)
39. Kimonos are ..... clothes in Japan. (**tradition**)
40. He said 'Good morning' in a most ..... way. (**friend**)
41. Paul is a good ..... (**music**)
42. The man could not concealing his ..... (**angry**)
43. She received some ..... training from her father. (**science**)
44. The house was ..... with people. (**crowd**)
45. The United Nations is an international ..... (**organize**)
46. I enjoyed the football match. It was quite ..... (**excite**)
47. I felt very ..... when I was a member of our school team. (**excite**)
48. .... workers often have serious accidents. (**care**)
49. The food was good but the ..... was very slow (**serve**)
50. Nobody in the office had received an ..... to the party. (**invite**)
51. It is cloudy and ..... today. (**rain**)



52. He used all his ..... to force the door open. (**strong**)
53. It is very ..... to go out too late in the evening. (**danger**)
54. I'm very ..... in being a teacher. (**interest**)
55. She has no ..... in being a teacher. (**interest**)
56. The teaching career doesn't ..... him. (**interest**)
57. Do you mind ..... after the children? (**look**)
58. He drives very ..... . (**danger**)
59. These animals are in danger of ..... . (**extinct**)
60. He was very ..... of the work he had done. (**pride**)
61. Tom tried to explain his .....from school. (**absent**)
62. These women are used to ..... their own money. (**earn**)
63. Smoking can cause ..... diseases. (**danger**)
64. It's no use ..... when they are determined not to understand. (**explanation**)
65. He sent all his children to school despite his ..... (**poor**)
66. He passed the examination ..... . (**ease**)
67. He passed the examination with ..... . (**ease**)
68. Japan produces cars, televisions, computers and other ..... . (**produce**)
69. You can't remember things when you are tired and ..... (**happy**)
70. The man could not conceal (che giấu) his ..... . (**angry**)
71. Sometimes it is difficult to make a good ..... on a difficult problem. (**decide**)
72. She felt a sense of ..... when her friend went to live abroad. (**lose**)
73. We cannot clean up our .....rivers and seas overnight. (**pollute**)
74. The ..... of the fire was welcome after our long journey through the snow. (**warm**)
75. ..... say about 5,000 species of plants and animals are eliminated (xóa sổ, triệt tiêu) each year. (**science**)
76. Gravity (trọng lực) is one of the most important ..... of Isaac Newton. (**discover**)
77. He is very interested in physics. He wants to become a ..... in the future. (**physics**)
78. "A Taste for Death" is about two famous men who are found ..... in a church. (**die**)
79. Some people believe that life and ..... are determined by fate. (**die**)
80. They were ..... in their new jobs. (**succeed**)
81. The figures (con số) have been ..... checked. (**complete**)
82. In the first two decades (thập niên) of its ..... , the cinema developed rapidly. (**exist**)
83. He is ..... active in spite of his old age. (**wonder**)



84. The plane arrived ..... after a violent storm. (safe)
85. The boy had been missing for five days and there were fears for his ..... (safe)
86. This man led a ..... happy life. (complete)
87. The United Nations is an international ..... (organize)
88. It is often useful to make a ..... between two things. (compare)
89. Our pupils are raising money (gây quỹ) for the ..... (poor)
90. Mary was ..... with long and difficult exercises. (bore)
91. Violence is not the best ..... to an argument. (solve)
92. Even though the class session was long, no one fell ..... until the last lecture. (sleep)
93. .... workers often have serious accidents. (care)
94. What is your ..... ? – I'm Vietnamese. (nation)
95. She looks more ..... with her Sunday best clothes. (beauty)
96. The ..... of this lake is 20 metres. (deep)
97. English is ..... used in many parts of the world. (wide)
98. Their ..... has lasted a lifetime. (friend)
99. Would you like to book a ..... to Hong Kong. (fly)
100. In today's global world, the ..... of English can not be denied and ignored. (important)
101. Extraterrestrial life has not been ..... proved yet. (science)
102. Larry and I enjoyed the magician's ..... and laughed at his gestures. (perform)
103. Computer is one of the most important ..... of the 20th century. (invent)
104. Thomas Edison is described as one of the "world's most prolific ..... " with a record-breaking 1,093 patents to his name. (invent)
105. The program on TV tonight is ..... We are ..... with watching the same program every day. (bore)
106. ...., nobody was injured in the accident last night. (luck)
107. The president's speech went on for so long that I almost died of ..... (bore)
108. In the future the public (dân chúng) will have a wider ..... of television programs. (choose)
109. Sally came in so ..... that she woke up everyone. (noise)
110. Alcohol can cause mental and ..... effects. (society)
111. The meat was cooked at a high ..... for 10 minutes. (hot)
112. The Eiffel Tower is a puddled iron tower 324 meters in ..... (high)
113. The diameter of a circle is always two times the ..... of the radius. (long)



# Bài 44

## SENTENCE

## TRANSFORMATION

---

### BÀI TẬP CĂN BẢN CHO LỚP 10

1. She is too weak to carry this bag. (Use “enough to”)
2. This book is so boring that I can't read it. (Use “such”)
3. The teacher made us repeat the sentence several times. (Passive Voice)
4. Our house needs to be painted. - Our house needs .....
5. Our house needs to be painted. - We must have .....
6. You should put on the raincoat because it has started to rain. - I advise .....
7. It's better for you not to have contact with her. - You'd better .....
8. The game was put off because the weather was bad. (Use “because of”)
9. This house belongs to Mr. Pike. - This is .....
10. She cooks well. - She is ..... ; - She is a .....
11. They have to pick her up about 4:30. (Passive Voice)
12. It started raining twenty minutes ago. (Use Present Perfect Tense)
13. We need to learn English. - It is.....
14. I don't want to talk to such a man. - I'd rather .....
15. I prefer walking to cycling. - I'd rather.....
16. This house needs rebuilding. - This house needs.....
17. The Browns have lived here since 2011. - The Browns began.....
18. He'll fail the exam if he doesn't improve his work. (Use “unless”)
19. He teaches English well. - He is.....
20. She drives with care. - She drives..... ; - She is.....
21. She spends 14 hours a day doing housework. - It takes.....
22. Someone is going to paint the house white and yellow. (Passive Voice)
23. Her voice is so beautiful that we all want to hear her sing. (Use “such”)
24. This problem is so complex that nobody can solve it in one day.  
- This is..... ; - This problem..... ; - This problem.....
25. You'd better not make another mistake. - I advise you.....
26. I advise you to be quick. - You'd better.....
27. Would you type this letter, please? - Would you mind.....?
28. He can't possibly succeed in such a circumstance. - It is impossible.....
29. This road is too dangerous for us to go at night. (Use “enough”)
30. People believe that he keeps a secret. - It..... ; - He.....
31. The man is my boss. The man's wife is fanning herself with the newspaper.  
(Use a Relative Clause)
32. He can't walk quickly because of his bad leg. (Use “prevent”)



33. We didn't arrive on time because of the traffic jam. (Use "prevent")
34. The moon doesn't shoot off into space because of gravity. (Use "keep")
35. The boat couldn't sail because of the rough sea. (Use "keep")
36. She was sad because of the news. - The news made .....
37. She cried because of the news. - The news made .....
38. He was asleep. - He was .....
39. My grandfather is a lover of music. - My grandfather .....
40. People know that he is an honest man. - He .....
41. He was in hurry and he didn't stay to dinner. - If .....
42. She drinks too much coffee because she doesn't feel calm. - If .....
43. The stain won't come out. You have this stain on your jacket. (Use a Relative Clause)
44. The spaghetti tasted delicious. We ate it yesterday. (Use a Relative Clause)
45. Jane goes to church twice a day. (Make a question)
46. John didn't know the language and had no friends in the town but he managed to get work. (Use "in spite of")
47. The firemen didn't break down the walls. (Passive Voice)
48. Roses can't possibly grow in such poor ground. - It is impossible .....
49. Coca-Cola has been sold since 1886. - Coca-Cola began.....
50. I prefer to leave on an early train. - I'd rather .....
51. Susan didn't watch TV. She went to bed early. (Use "instead of")
52. What a pity you failed your driving test! - I wish .....
53. They will make him confess everything. (Passive Voice)
54. We started cooking for the party two hours ago. - We have .....
55. The old man has a terrible cold. He came into the inn wet to the skin. (Use a Relative Clause)
56. He has been playing all afternoon. He didn't get on with his work. (Use "instead of")
57. Rainforests are being cut down in the Amazon. (Active Voice)
58. That old typewriter is not worth repairing. - It's no use .....
- There is no .....
59. I expect to see him sometime. (Use "look forward to")
60. The poem was very long. I couldn't memorize it in half an hour.  
- (Use "too") .....; - (Use "enough") .....
61. His girlfriend doesn't know he loves her. - He wishes .....
62. Don't continue to smoke if you want to have a better health. - Stop .....
63. He needs to improve his skills. - It is .....
64. She walked too fast for the kids to keep pace with.  
- (Use "too") .....; - (Use "enough") .....
65. The house needs redecorating. - The house needs .....
66. You failed because you skipped most of your classes. - If .....
67. They were installing a burglar alarm in the house. (Passive Voice)
68. She is so intelligent that we all want to study with her. (Use "such")



69. She is so young that she cannot get married. - (Use "too")  
.....; - (Use "enough") .....
70. He always got up early with difficulty. - He always had .....
71. If you wear warm clothes, you won't catch cold. - You can avoid .... by .....
72. It's a pity that you forgot the date of the meeting. - If only .....
73. The letter contained three spelling errors. You sent this letter to our customers last week. (Use a Relative Clause)
74. She left her husband because of his poverty and illness. (Use "because")
75. She was arrested because she stole money from this bank. - If .....
76. New York has a lot of tall buildings. - There .....
77. She wore warm clothes because she didn't want to get a cold. (Use "so as")
78. I didn't catch the train because of the traffic accident. (Use "prevent")
79. The trousers are too small for me. I bought them yesterday. (Use "which")
80. I'm expecting to see you again. - I'm looking .....
81. It's a pity that you forgot the date of the meeting. - If only .....
82. No one is at home. Ringing the bell is useless. - It's no .....
83. He isn't a careful driver. (Use "carefully")
84. He went out with a foreigner. Many people saw it. - Many people saw .....
85. This room is pleasant to work in. - To work / Working .....  
- It is .....  
- How .....

## Bài 45

# MISUSED WORDS

---

### 1. LONELY - ALONE

*Lonely* (cô đơn) means that you are sad because you are not in contact with your friends. You may be surrounded by strangers but still feel *lonely*.

*Alone* (cô độc, một mình) means that you are by yourself; there is no one near you. The word does not tell you anything of your feelings, it simply states that you are unaccompanied.

*It was scary being all alone in a strange city.*

*Without her friends, it was a long and lonely journey.*

### 2. AFFECT - EFFECT - AFFECTION

*affect* [ə'fekt] (verb): tác động đến, gây ảnh hưởng

*effect* [ɪ'fekt] (noun): tác động, ảnh hưởng

*affection* [ə'fekʃ(ə)n] (noun): sự quý mến

*The weather will affect my plans for the weekend.*

*Over time the effect of loud music can damage your hearing.*



*Children need lots of love and affection.*

Đề thi ĐH Khối D, 2011:

Changes in the availability and use of natural resources located in rural areas \_\_\_\_\_ the people who earn a living from those resources.

- A. encourage    B. affect    C. effect    D. stimulate

3. RAISE - RISE

*raise – raised – raised + OBJECT* : nhắc, nâng, đưa vật gì lên cao hơn

*rise – rose – risen* : nhô lên, dâng lên, đứng lên, tăng lên

*He raised his hat when he saw me.*

*The sun rose just after six.*

Đề thi ĐH Khối A1, 2014:

This \_\_\_\_\_ serious questions about whether lack of sleep is affecting children's ability to concentrate at school.

- A. results    B. comes    C. raises    D. rises

4. LAY - LIE

*lay – laid – laid - laying* : đặt

*lie – lay – lain – lying* : nằm

*lie – lied – lied – lying* : nói dối

Đề thi ĐH Khối A1, 2013:

Books and magazines \_\_\_\_\_ around made his room very untidy.

- A. that lie    B. laying    C. which lied    D. lying

5. PRINCIPAL - PRINCIPLE

*principal* (adjective): chính

*principal* (noun): hiệu trưởng

*principal* (adjective): nguyên tắc, nguyên lý

*The principal aim of the project is to reduce youth crime.*

*Mr. Babcock is the principal of the high school.*

*It is a fundamental principle in the modern world that disabled people should be given the opportunity to participate in modern society.*

6. ASLEEP - SLEEPING - SLEEPY

*asleep* (đang ngủ) là adj.+adv. đi sau động từ.

*He soon fell asleep (thiếp ngủ đi).*

*He was asleep in a few moments.*

*I made sure he was asleep before I opened the door.*

*sleeping* là present participle hoặc adj. đi trước danh từ.

*the sleeping child; the sleeping city*

*He was sleeping = He was asleep.*

*sleepy* (buồn ngủ), là adj. đi trước danh từ hoặc sau động từ.

*She rubbed her sleepy eyes.*

*The child was so sleepy that his head was nodding as he sat there.*

*He felt sleepy and went to bed.*



7. **BESIDE - BESIDES**

*beside* (bên cạnh) là giới từ (= by the side of, close to).

*Sit down beside me.*

*I live beside the sea.*

*besides* (ngoài, ngoại trừ) cũng là giới từ (= in addition to, except, apart from, other than).

*Have you any money besides this £5 note?*

*No one besides the owner could control the angry dog.*

*besides* (ngoài ra, hơn nữa) là adverb (= in addition to this, moreover, furthermore): *I am not going to the dance because I haven't a new dress and, besides, I must finish my work tonight.*

8. **EACH OTHER - ONE ANOTHER : nhau**

*The two girls were helping each other with the cooking.*

*The girls in the hockey team were talking to one another about the match.*

Nhìn chung, *each other* và *one another* đồng nghĩa với nhau. Tuy nhiên, người ta ưa dùng *each other* cho 2 người/vật và dùng *one another* cho nhiều người/vật.

Danh ngôn: *To love is not to look at each other but to look together in the same direction* (Yêu nhau không phải là nhìn nhau nhưng là cùng nhau nhìn về một hướng). — Antoine de Saint-Exupery

9. **BETWEEN - AMONG**

*between*

giữa hai người/vật:

*She was sitting between John and Sebastian.*

hoặc giữa nhiều người/vật tách biệt với nhau và số lượng không lớn lắm:

*Switzerland lies between France, Italy, Austria and Germany.*

*among*

giữa nhiều người/vật như đám đông (crowd), nhóm (group), tập hợp (collection of things) trong đó các đơn vị không tách biệt với nhau:

*She was standing laughing among a crowd of journalists.*

*We found a little house hidden among the trees.*

**EXERCISE**

1. The Public Auditorium (*lies, lays*) north of the lake.
2. The workers were (*lying, laying*) cement for the patio when it began to rain.
3. He was exhausted so he decided to (*lie, lay*) down for a little while.
4. After the heavy rain, the water in the lake (*raised, rose*) another two feet.
5. The paper hangers decided to (*raise, rise*) the picture a few more inches.
6. The soldier (*rose, raised*) the flag when he heard the bugle blow.
7. In chemistry class, we learned that hot air (*rises, raises*).



8. The headquarters were (*formerly, formally*) located in Philadelphia.
9. (*Especially, Special*) attention must be given to child protection.
10. Tom was (*among, between*) those students selected to participate in debate.
11. The competition (*among, between*) Obama and McCain grew intense.
12. He is always at his best (*among, between*) strangers.
13. Differences can be seen (*between, among*) weekdays, weekends and holidays.
14. Betty had to choose (*between, among*) three universities she might attend.
15. They were (*already, all ready*) to leave when a telegram arrived.
16. Maria has been working (*hardly, hard*) on her thesis.
17. I (*hardly, hard*) studied at all last term. I did very little work.
18. Today was Justine's eighth time in the (*principal's, principle's*) office.
19. Malnutrition is one of the (*principal, principle*) causes of disease in the poorer countries of Africa.
20. Newton discovered the (*principal, principle*) of universal gravitation.
21. William Faulkner (*adopted, adapted*) Ernest Hemingway's novel *To Have and Have Not* for the movies.
22. The Allan family (*adopted, adapted*) Edgar Poe as a child.
23. A lack of rainfall usually (*affects, effects*) the size of a harvest.
24. Penicillin (*affects, effects*) a rapid recovery in most patients with bacterial infections (nhiễm trùng).
25. The (*amount, number*) of money he carried in his pocket would feed a substantial (*amount, number*) of people.
26. Jane was reading a book on the sofa when she (*felt, fell*) asleep.
27. He told me that he was (*sleepy, asleep*) after a restless night.
28. When Sue set the table, she placed the silverware (*besides, beside*) the plates.
29. The President sat (*beside, besides*) the Prime Minister at the banquet.
30. She was given a scholarship (*besides, beside*) the award.
31. His loud humming was (*affecting, effecting*) my ability to concentrate.
32. The sound of the falling rain had a calming (*affect, effect*), nearly putting me to sleep.
33. Jane is the (*taller, tallest*) of the two girls.
34. Don't blame me! (*Its, It's*) not my fault.
35. I bought the book even though (*it's, its*) cover was torn.
36. I've heard that (*it's, its*) going to be a hard winter this year.
37. For turning in the wallet, I was given a \$50 (*award, reward*).
38. The Golden Palm is the highest (*award, reward*) at the Cannes Film Festival.
39. My niece has a (*lose, loose*) tooth.
40. Did you (*lose, loose*) your keys, or did you misplace them?
41. I wish there was (*fewer, less*) hatred in this world.
42. (*Fewer, Less*) than 12 people attended the workshop.
43. I earn (*less, fewer*) money than a taxi driver.
44. Cape Horn is (*notorious, famous*) for its dangerous seas.
45. I promise to (*tell, say*) the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth.



46. Some artists are very (*sensitive, sensible*) to criticism.
47. Use your experience and knowledge to make (*sensitive, sensible*) decisions.
48. From his manner I (*implied, inferred*) that he wasn't pleased.
49. Without saying a word, he nonetheless (*implied, inferred*) by his body language that his partner had cheated.
50. Many children leave school apparently (*incapable, unable*) of writing a letter of application for a job.
51. When he becomes an engineer, he will probably get a job in an (*industrial, industrious*) area.
52. The UK (*consists, comprises*) Great Britain and Northern Ireland.
53. The (*prize, price*) of oil has risen sharply
54. There's a chance to win a (*prize, price*) if you can answer this question.
55. The bank (*refused, denied*) to grant us a loan because we had no security.
56. The athlete was (*born, borne*) on the shoulders of the crowd after the game.
57. A child was (*born, borne*) at 12:01 New Year's day.
58. If this quiz goes on any (*farther, further*), my head is going to explode!
59. The chocolate cake we had for (*desert, dessert*) was a bit dry.
60. You shouldn't wear an (*everyday, every day*) outfit to the wedding.
61. In (*everyday, every day*) life, you don't very often meet an elephant.
62. Don't use the (*everyday, every day*) dishes – it's a special occasion.
63. I have to work (*everyday, every day*) this week except Friday.
64. Take a deep (*breath, breathe*) when you find yourself anxious and stressed.
65. We are polluting the air we (*breath, breathe*).
66. When the Berlin wall came down, it was a (*historic, historical*) occasion.
67. *King Lear* is Shakespeare's finest (*historic, historical*) epic.
68. The motorcyclist was (*died, dead*) on arrival at the hospital.
69. The motorcyclist (*died, dead*) on arrival at the hospital.
70. The water came up (*above, over*) my knees.
71. Can you see the helicopter (trục thăng) (*above, over*) the palace?
72. I like all drinks (*besides, except*) whisky.
73. (*Besides, Except*) half a bottle of whiskey, he drank three gins and some beer.
74. The girls were beautifully dressed in their national (*customs, costumes*).
75. Nowadays, a lot of the old (*customs, costumes*) are dying out.
76. My (*older, elder*) brother was in a car accident last week.
77. I packed a swimsuit (*in case, if*) I should have time to go to the beach.
78. Have you heard the (*last, latest*) news?
79. They (*robbed, stole*) the bank and got away with five thousand pounds.
80. They (*robbed, stole*) five thousand pounds from the bank.
81. "Officer! I've been (*robbed, stolen*)!"
82. The criminal went to (*prison, the prison*).
83. The plumber (thợ ống nước) went to (*prison, the prison*) to fix the pipes.
84. I would throw away (*valueless, invaluable*) things without a second thought.
85. I bought a (*gold, golden*) watch. She has (*gold, golden*) hair.



# 100 IMPORTANT IRREGULAR VERBS

	V1 Base Form	V2 Past Simple	V3 Past Participle	Meaning
1	arise	arose	arisen	thức dậy, nảy sinh
2	awake	awaked / awoke	awaked/awoken	thức dậy, đánh thức
3	be	was, were	been	thì, là, ở
4	bear	bore \	borne (Active) be born (Passive)	mang, chịu, sinh (đẻ). được sinh ra
5	beat	beat	beaten	gõ, đánh, đánh bại
6	become	became	become	trở nên, trở thành
7	begin	began	begun	bắt đầu
8	bend	bent	bent	uốn cong
9	bite	bit	bitten / bit	cắn
10	bleed	bled	bled	chảy máu
11	blow	blew	blown	thổi, bị thổi
12	break	broke	broken	bể, gãy, làm vỡ
13	bring	brought	brought	mang, đem
14	build	built	built	xây, dựng nên
15	burn	burned / burnt	burned / burnt	cháy, đốt
16	buy	bought	bought	mua
17	catch	caught	caught	bắt
18	choose	chose	chosen	chọn
19	come	came	come	đến
20	cost	cost	cost	có giá là, trị giá...
21	cut	cut	cut	cắt
22	dig	dug	dug	đào
23	do	did	done	làm
24	draw	drew	drawn	kéo, vẽ
25	dream	dreamed/dreamt	dreamed/dreamt	mơ
26	drink	drank	drunk	uống
27	drive	drove	driven	lái xe, xua đuổi, khiến
28	eat	ate	eaten	ăn
29	fall	fell	fallen	té, ngã, rơi
30	feed	fed	fed	cho ăn, nuôi
31	feel	felt	felt	cảm thấy, nắm
32	fight	fought	fought	chiến đấu, đánh
33	find	found	found	tìm thấy, nhận thấy
34	fly	flew	flown	bay, thả (diều)



35	forbid	forbade	forbidden	cấm
36	forget	forgot	forgotten	quên
37	forgive	forgave	forgiven	tha thứ
38	freeze	froze	frozen	đông, làm đông
39	get	got	got / gotten	lấy, đạt được, bị, nên
40	give	gave	given	cho
41	go	went	gone	đi
42	grow	grew	grown	mọc, trồng, trở nên
43	hang *	hung	hung	treo, được treo
44	have	had	had	có
45	hear	heard	heard	nghe
46	hide	hid	hidden	giấu, trốn, nấp
47	hit	hit	hit	đụng, đánh
48	hold	held	held	giữ, tổ chức
49	hurt	hurt	hurt	làm đau, tổn thương
50	keep	kept	kept	giữ, tiếp tục
51	know	knew	known	biết, quen
52	lay	laid	laid	đặt, để
53	lead	led	led	dẫn, lãnh đạo
54	learn	learned / learnt	learned / learnt	học, biết được
55	leave	left	left	rời khỏi, để lại, để
56	lend	lent	lent	cho mượn, cho vay
57	let	let	let	để cho, cho phép
58	lie	lay	lain	nằm
59	light	lighted / lit	lighted / lit	thắp (đèn), mồi lửa
60	lose	lost	lost	mất, thua
61	make	made	made	làm, chế tạo
62	mean	meant	meant	nghĩa là, ý muốn nói
63	meet	met	met	gặp, đáp ứng
64	overcome	overcame	overcome	thắng, khắc phục
65	pay	paid	paid	trả tiền
66	put	put	put	đặt, để
67	quit	quit	quit	ngưng, rời khỏi
68	read	read	read	đọc
69	ride	rode	ridden	đi (xe), cưỡi (ngựa)
70	ring	rang	rung	rung, reo lên

\* *hang - hanged - hanged* : treo cổ.

Ex. *They hanged the murderer by the neck until he was dead.*



71	rise	rose	risen	đứng lên, mọc, tăng
72	run	ran	run	chạy, điều hành
73	say	said	said	nói
74	see	saw	seen	nhìn, thấy, gặp, hiểu
75	seek	sought	sought	tìm, gắng sức
76	sell	sold	sold	bán, được bán
77	send	sent	sent	gửi, sai phái
78	shake	shook \	shaken	lắc, rung
79	shine	shone	shone	chiếu sáng
80	show	showed	showed / shown	chỉ, cho thấy
81	sing	sang	sung	hát
82	sit	sat	sat	ngồi
83	sleep	slept	slept	ngủ
84	speak	spoke	spoken	nói
85	spend	spent	spent	tiêu xài, sử dụng
86	stand	stood	stood	đứng, chịu đựng
87	strike	struck	struck	đánh, gõ
88	swear	swore	sworn	thề, chửi thề
89	swim	swam	swum	bơi
90	take	took	taken	lấy, cầm, nhận
91	teach	taught	taught	dạy
92	tear	tore	torn	xé rách
93	tell	told	told	nói, bảo, yêu cầu
94	think	thought	thought	nghĩ, cho rằng
95	throw	threw	thrown	ném
96	understand	understood	understood	hiểu
97	wake	woke	woken	thức dậy, đánh thức
98	wear	wore	worn	mặc
99	win	won	won	thắng
100	write	wrote	written	viết



**Nguyen Cong Tru High School's English Department Staff  
for the 2015-2016 School Year**

- Nguyễn Đình Diễn, Huyền Tôn Nữ Tịnh Hảo, Lê Sĩ Thanh, Trần Mỹ Liên, Trần Thúy Phương, Võ Thị Phong Thuý, Trần Thị Vân Châu, Mai Thị Mỹ Tú, Phạm Thị Lạc Sinh, Nguyễn Minh Đức, Nguyễn Nhật Đan Thùy, Cao Thị Hồng Duyên, Chu Thị Thủy Tiên, Nguyễn Thị Hương Lan, Lê Trần Thu Thủy, Dương Ngọc Hoàng Yến, Đặng Thị Phương Thùy •